

# **STATA REPORTING REFERENCE MANUAL**

## **RELEASE 16**



A Stata Press Publication  
StataCorp LLC  
College Station, Texas



® Copyright © 1985–2019 StataCorp LLC  
All rights reserved  
Version 16

Published by Stata Press, 4905 Lakeway Drive, College Station, Texas 77845  
Typeset in T<sub>E</sub>X

ISBN-10: 1-59718-294-X

ISBN-13: 978-1-59718-294-2

This manual is protected by copyright. All rights are reserved. No part of this manual may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transcribed, in any form or by any means—electronic, mechanical, photocopy, recording, or otherwise—without the prior written permission of StataCorp LLC unless permitted subject to the terms and conditions of a license granted to you by StataCorp LLC to use the software and documentation. No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any intellectual property rights is granted by this document.

StataCorp provides this manual “as is” without warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. StataCorp may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and the program(s) described in this manual at any time and without notice.

The software described in this manual is furnished under a license agreement or nondisclosure agreement. The software may be copied only in accordance with the terms of the agreement. It is against the law to copy the software onto DVD, CD, disk, diskette, tape, or any other medium for any purpose other than backup or archival purposes.

The automobile dataset appearing on the accompanying media is Copyright © 1979 by Consumers Union of U.S., Inc., Yonkers, NY 10703-1057 and is reproduced by permission from CONSUMER REPORTS, April 1979.

Stata, **STATA** Stata Press, Mata, **MATA** and NetCourse are registered trademarks of StataCorp LLC.

Stata and Stata Press are registered trademarks with the World Intellectual Property Organization of the United Nations.

NetCourseNow is a trademark of StataCorp LLC.

Other brand and product names are registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective companies.

For copyright information about the software, type `help copyright` within Stata.

The suggested citation for this software is

StataCorp. 2019. *Stata: Release 16*. Statistical Software. College Station, TX: StataCorp LLC.

# Contents

Intro .....	Introduction to reporting manual	1
docx2pdf .....	Convert a Word (.docx) document to a PDF file	4
Dynamic documents intro .....	Introduction to dynamic documents	7
Dynamic tags .....	Dynamic tags for text files	12
dyndoc .....	Convert dynamic Markdown document to HTML or Word (.docx) document	19
dyntext .....	Process Stata dynamic tags in text file	31
html2docx .....	Convert an HTML file to a Word (.docx) document	36
markdown .....	Convert Markdown document to HTML file or Word (.docx) document	39
putdocx intro .....	Introduction to generating Office Open XML (.docx) files	46
putdocx begin .....	Create an Office Open XML (.docx) file	56
putdocx pagebreak .....	Add breaks to an Office Open XML (.docx) file	63
putdocx paragraph .....	Add text or images to an Office Open XML (.docx) file	67
putdocx table .....	Add tables to an Office Open XML (.docx) file	80
Appendix for putdocx .....	Appendix for putdocx entries	101
putexcel .....	Export results to an Excel file	106
putexcel advanced .....	Export results to an Excel file using advanced syntax	127
putpdf intro .....	Introduction to generating PDF files	143
putpdf begin .....	Create a PDF file	148
putpdf pagebreak .....	Add breaks to a PDF file	152
putpdf paragraph .....	Add text or images to a PDF file	155
putpdf table .....	Add tables to a PDF file	162
Appendix for putpdf .....	Appendix for putpdf entries	182
Glossary .....		185
Subject and author index .....		186

# Cross-referencing the documentation

When reading this manual, you will find references to other Stata manuals, for example, [U] [27 Overview of Stata estimation commands](#); [R] [regress](#); and [D] [reshape](#). The first example is a reference to chapter 27, *Overview of Stata estimation commands*, in the *User's Guide*; the second is a reference to the `regress` entry in the *Base Reference Manual*; and the third is a reference to the `reshape` entry in the *Data Management Reference Manual*.

All the manuals in the Stata Documentation have a shorthand notation:

[GSM]	<i>Getting Started with Stata for Mac</i>
[GSU]	<i>Getting Started with Stata for Unix</i>
[GSW]	<i>Getting Started with Stata for Windows</i>
[U]	<i>Stata User's Guide</i>
[R]	<i>Stata Base Reference Manual</i>
[BAYES]	<i>Stata Bayesian Analysis Reference Manual</i>
[CM]	<i>Stata Choice Models Reference Manual</i>
[D]	<i>Stata Data Management Reference Manual</i>
[DSGE]	<i>Stata Dynamic Stochastic General Equilibrium Models Reference Manual</i>
[ERM]	<i>Stata Extended Regression Models Reference Manual</i>
[FMM]	<i>Stata Finite Mixture Models Reference Manual</i>
[FN]	<i>Stata Functions Reference Manual</i>
[G]	<i>Stata Graphics Reference Manual</i>
[IRT]	<i>Stata Item Response Theory Reference Manual</i>
[LASSO]	<i>Stata Lasso Reference Manual</i>
[XT]	<i>Stata Longitudinal-Data/Panel-Data Reference Manual</i>
[META]	<i>Stata Meta-Analysis Reference Manual</i>
[ME]	<i>Stata Multilevel Mixed-Effects Reference Manual</i>
[MI]	<i>Stata Multiple-Imputation Reference Manual</i>
[MV]	<i>Stata Multivariate Statistics Reference Manual</i>
[PSS]	<i>Stata Power, Precision, and Sample-Size Reference Manual</i>
[P]	<i>Stata Programming Reference Manual</i>
[RPT]	<i>Stata Reporting Reference Manual</i>
[SP]	<i>Stata Spatial Autoregressive Models Reference Manual</i>
[SEM]	<i>Stata Structural Equation Modeling Reference Manual</i>
[SVY]	<i>Stata Survey Data Reference Manual</i>
[ST]	<i>Stata Survival Analysis Reference Manual</i>
[TS]	<i>Stata Time-Series Reference Manual</i>
[TE]	<i>Stata Treatment-Effects Reference Manual: Potential Outcomes/Counterfactual Outcomes</i>
[I]	<i>Stata Glossary and Index</i>
[M]	<i>Mata Reference Manual</i>



## Description

This manual documents Stata's features for reporting. With the commands described here, you can create reproducible reports in Word, Excel, PDF, and HTML formats. These reports can be customized to include formatted text, tables of Stata results, and graphs.

## Remarks and examples

Remarks are presented under the following headings:

- [Introduction](#)
- [Exporting to a Word \(.docx\) file](#)
- [Exporting to a PDF file](#)
- [Exporting to an Excel file](#)
- [Creating dynamic documents](#)
- [Converting file types](#)

## Introduction

Stata's commands for exporting estimation results, summary statistics, and graphs deliver neatly formatted reports in Word, Excel, PDF, and HTML files.

There are two varieties of commands for creating reports. The first variety creates Word documents, Excel files, and PDF documents that incorporate stored results from Stata commands in formatted text and tables. The `putdocx`, `putpdf`, and `putexcel` suites of commands create documents in this manner. The second variety creates HTML and Word documents that include the full output from Stata commands and allows you to format the text using Markdown. The `dyndoc` and `dymtext` commands, which are discussed in [Creating dynamic documents](#), incorporate Stata output in this manner.

Below, we briefly describe each of the report-generating commands. We also review the commands that allow you to convert files from one type to another.

## Exporting to a Word (.docx) file

The `putdocx` suite of commands creates Word (.docx) documents with embedded Stata results. With single-line commands, you can export a whole estimation table, an image, or a matrix to a document. You can also build complex tables with custom layouts. The suite allows you to create a document complete with formatted text and Stata results without leaving Stata.

[RPT] <a href="#">putdocx intro</a>	Introduction to generating Office Open XML (.docx) files
[RPT] <a href="#">putdocx begin</a>	Create an Office Open XML (.docx) file
[RPT] <a href="#">putdocx pagebreak</a>	Add breaks to an Office Open XML (.docx) file
[RPT] <a href="#">putdocx paragraph</a>	Add text or images to an Office Open XML (.docx) file
[RPT] <a href="#">putdocx table</a>	Add tables to an Office Open XML (.docx) file

We recommend that you read [RPT] [putdocx intro](#) first for an overview of the putdocx commands and how you use them. Then you will want to review [RPT] [putdocx begin](#) to learn how to create a .docx file in memory. Once you have created a .docx file with putdocx begin, you can refer to [RPT] [putdocx paragraph](#) for exporting text and images to your file and refer to [RPT] [putdocx table](#) for exporting tables of results to your file.

The putdocx suite allows you to interact Stata’s capabilities with Word’s additional formatting features. You can create a .docx file complete with Stata results from within Stata, but you might also append fragments created in both Stata and Word. See [Workflow options for report building](#) in [RPT] [putdocx intro](#) for different ways to create Word documents and how to determine which method is most appropriate for the report you want to create.

Word documents can also be created using the dynamic documents commands described below in [Creating dynamic documents](#).

## Exporting to a PDF file

The putpdf suite of commands creates PDF files with Stata results. With these commands, you can incorporate formatted text, summary statistics, regression results, images, customized tables, and matrices in your document.

[RPT] <a href="#">putpdf intro</a>	Introduction to generating PDF files
[RPT] <a href="#">putpdf begin</a>	Create a PDF file
[RPT] <a href="#">putpdf pagebreak</a>	Add breaks to a PDF file
[RPT] <a href="#">putpdf paragraph</a>	Add text or images to a PDF file
[RPT] <a href="#">putpdf table</a>	Add tables to a PDF file

We recommend that you read [RPT] [putpdf intro](#) first for an overview of the putpdf commands and how you use them. In [RPT] [putpdf begin](#), we demonstrate how to create a file in memory. Once you have done so, you can refer to [RPT] [putpdf paragraph](#) and [RPT] [putpdf table](#) for details on embedding text, images, and tables in a PDF file.

## Exporting to an Excel file

With putexcel, you can export Stata results to an Excel workbook, including estimation results, matrices, and images. You can write Stata expressions as well as Excel formulas to a workbook and save portions of your work to separate sheets.

[RPT] <a href="#">putexcel</a>	Export results to an Excel file
[RPT] <a href="#">putexcel advanced</a>	Export results to an Excel file using advanced syntax

We recommend that you read [RPT] [putexcel](#) first to learn the basics of exporting Stata results to Excel. In [RPT] [putexcel advanced](#), we provide advanced syntax for exporting multiple types of results simultaneously and for formatting existing contents of cells.

## Creating dynamic documents

Stata's dynamic document commands allow you to embed Stata output in text files and to create HTML files and Word documents from Markdown text and Stata output. Dynamic tags are used to process Stata commands in a text file; they run the code and export the output to the destination file. To create text files with Stata output, you simply enclose Stata commands within these [dynamic tags](#) throughout your source file and then use [dyntext](#) to create the output file. To create HTML files and Word documents, you can combine Stata dynamic tags and Markdown text in a file and then use [dyndoc](#) to convert it to an HTML file or Word document. [dyndoc](#) calls on [markdown](#) to process the Markdown text.

<a href="#">[RPT] Dynamic documents intro</a>	Introduction to dynamic documents
<a href="#">[RPT] Dynamic tags</a>	Dynamic tags for text files
<a href="#">[RPT] dyndoc</a>	Convert dynamic Markdown document to HTML or Word (.docx) document
<a href="#">[RPT] dyntext</a>	Process Stata dynamic tags in text file
<a href="#">[RPT] markdown</a>	Convert Markdown document to HTML file or Word (.docx) document

We recommend reading [\[RPT\] Dynamic documents intro](#) first because it demonstrates the process of using dynamic tags in your text file, converting it to an output text file, and converting it to an output HTML file or Word document. After reading that entry, you can review [\[RPT\] Dynamic tags](#) for the list of tags that are available for including Stata output in your file. You will find the relevant tags for running Stata commands, including graphs in your file, and displaying Stata expressions.

## Converting file types

Stata also has commands for converting files from HTML to Word and from Word to PDF. These commands may be used whether the original files were created using one of the Stata commands listed above or otherwise.

<a href="#">[RPT] html2docx</a>	Convert an HTML file to a Word (.docx) document
<a href="#">[RPT] docx2pdf</a>	Convert a Word (.docx) document to a PDF file

# Title

docx2pdf — Convert a Word (.docx) document to a PDF file

Description

Quick start

Syntax

Options

Remarks and examples

Also see

## Description

docx2pdf converts a Word (.docx) document to a PDF file.

## Quick start

Convert Word document myfile.docx to a PDF saved as myfile.pdf

```
docx2pdf myfile
```

As above, but save the PDF as mypdf.pdf

```
docx2pdf myfile, saving(mypdf)
```

As above, and overwrite the existing mypdf.pdf

```
docx2pdf myfile, saving(mypdf) replace
```

## Syntax

```
docx2pdf srcfile [ , options ]
```

*srcfile* is a .docx file. If *srcfile* is specified without an extension, .docx is assumed. If *srcfile* contains embedded spaces or other special characters, enclose it in double quotes.

<i>options</i>	Description
<u>s</u> aving( <i>targetfile</i> )	specify the target PDF file to be saved
<u>r</u> eplace	replace the target PDF file if it already exists
<u>n</u> omsg	suppress message with link to <i>targetfile</i>

## Options

saving(*targetfile*) specifies the target PDF file to be saved. If *targetfile* is specified without an extension, .pdf is assumed. If *targetfile* contains embedded spaces or other special characters, enclose it in double quotes. If saving() is not specified, the target filename is constructed using the source filename (*srcfile*) with the .pdf extension.

replace specifies that the target PDF file be replaced if it already exists.

nomsg suppresses the message that contains a link to the target file.

## Remarks and examples

`docx2pdf` converts Word (.docx) documents to PDF files. This command is most useful when you want to convert an HTML file to a PDF file; in this case, you would first use [html2docx](#) to convert the HTML file to a Word document and then use `docx2pdf` to convert it to a PDF file. If you would like to convert a dynamic Markdown document to a PDF file, you can use [dyndoc](#) to create a Word document and then use `docx2pdf` to convert that Word document to a PDF file.

If you are wanting to embed Stata results and graphs in a PDF file, you can also use the `putpdf` suite; see [\[RPT\] putpdf intro](#).

### ► Example 1: Convert Word document to a PDF file

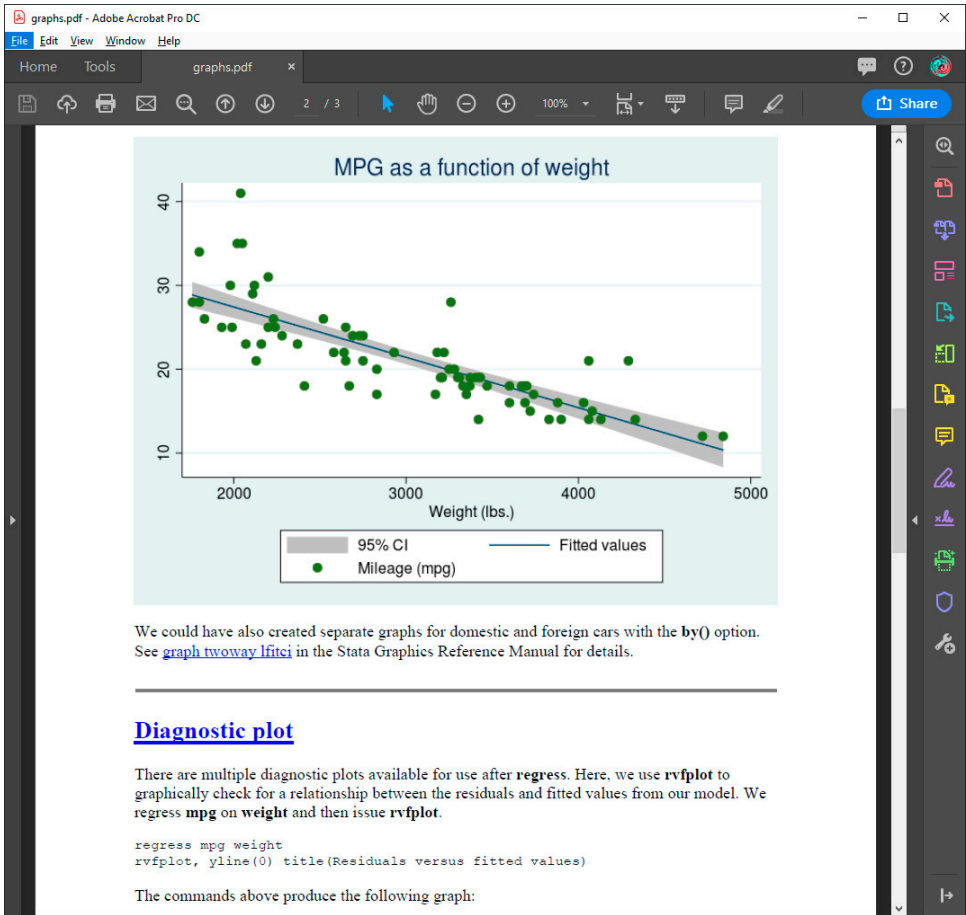
We have a Word document, `graphs.docx`, which you can download to your current working directory by typing

```
. copy http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/graphs.docx .
```

To convert this file to a PDF file, we type

```
. docx2pdf graphs.docx
```

Because we did not specify a filename for our target file, the source filename was used with the .pdf extension. Thus, the file `graphs.pdf` was saved. Here is a portion of this file:



You can see the whole file at <http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/graphs.pdf>.

## Also see

[RPT] [html2docx](#) — Convert an HTML file to a Word (.docx) document

[RPT] [putpdf intro](#) — Introduction to generating PDF files

[Description](#)[Remarks and examples](#)[Also see](#)

## Description

Stata's dynamic document commands create text files, Word (.docx) documents, and HTML files that include Stata results. With these commands, you can create documents that combine text with summary statistics, regression results, graphs, and other Stata results. You can include the full output of Stata commands or incorporate individual values from the results of commands. Word documents and HTML files can easily be customized using the Markdown text-formatting language.

See the following manual entries for details on dynamic documents:

<a href="#">[RPT] Dynamic tags</a>	Dynamic tags for text files
<a href="#">[RPT] dyndoc</a>	Convert dynamic Markdown document to HTML or Word (.docx) document
<a href="#">[RPT] dyntext</a>	Process Stata dynamic tags in text file
<a href="#">[RPT] markdown</a>	Convert Markdown document to HTML file or Word (.docx) document

These documents are dynamic because, as your data change, you simply rerun the `dyndoc` or `dyntext` command that creates your dynamic document, and the HTML file, Word document, or text file is updated with the new results.

## Remarks and examples

Creating files with Stata output is straightforward with `dyntext` and `dyndoc`. The former processes Stata commands within a plain text file to create a text file that includes Stata output. The latter converts a text file with Markdown text and Stata commands into a formatted HTML file or Word document file with Stata output. The Stata commands are processed according to the [dynamic tags](#) that indicate how commands, output, results of expressions, and graphs should be inserted in a document. Markdown, a simple markup language with a formatting syntax based on plain text, is processed by `dyndoc`. This allows you to include headings, subheadings, bold and italic font, text boxes, bulleted lists, and more in the HTML files and Word documents generated by this command.

Below, we briefly overview and demonstrate the dynamic document creation commands. See the individual entries for the syntax and additional examples.

### ► Example 1: Using dynamic tags

Whether you want to create a text file, Word document, or an HTML file, you will use dynamic tags in your source file to embed Stata output in your destination file. Different tags are available to include Stata output, expressions, and graphs in the destination file. With dynamic tags, you can control whether the Stata command, the output, or both are included in the final document. For example, in the following text file we load `auto.dta` and then `summarize mpg`:

```
----- begin example.txt -----

Using Stata dynamic tags
=====

I am going to examine fuel efficiency using -auto.dta-. First, I load the dataset:
<<dd_do>>
sysuse auto, clear
<</dd_do>>

Now I -summarize mpg-, but I only display the output, not the command:
<<dd_do: nocommands>>
summarize mpg
<</dd_do>>

----- end example.txt -----
```

You can type

```
. copy http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/example.txt .
```

to copy `example.txt` to your current working directory.

We use the `<<dd_do>>` dynamic tag to run the `sysuse` command. However, when summarizing `mpg`, we specify the `nocommands` attribute to suppress the command in the output file. Attributes, which can be thought of as options, modify the tag’s behavior. See [\[RPT\] Dynamic tags](#) for a full list of dynamic tags.

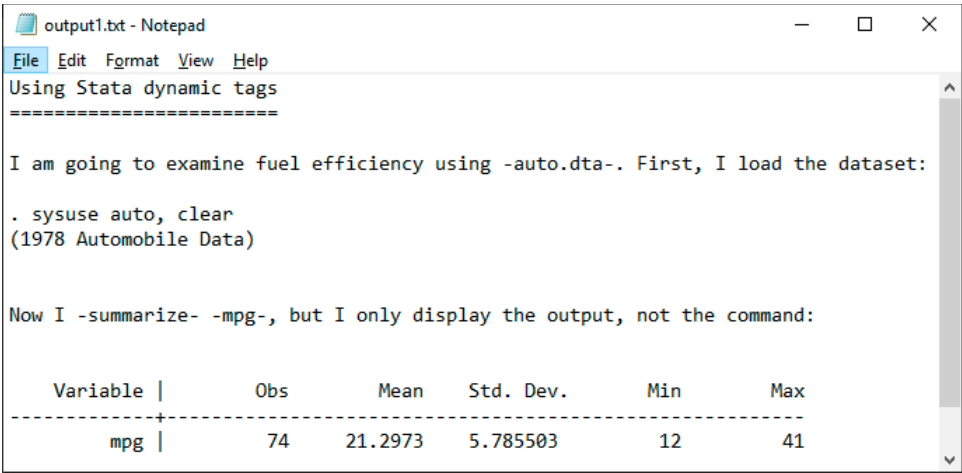


➤ Example 2: Create a text file with Stata output

Having enclosed the Stata commands within the dynamic tags in our text file, we can use `dyntext` to embed the output from those commands in a text file:

```
. dyntext example.txt, saving(output1.txt)
```

This command produces the following:



This `output1.txt` file is available at <http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/>.



For a more detailed example of including Stata output in text files, see [RPT] [dyntext](#).



### ► Example 3: Create an HTML file with Stata output

Suppose that now we want to convert `example.txt` to an HTML file. We could use `dyndoc` instead of `dyntext`, but the output would not be formatted nicely; you can try it for yourself to see the difference. In fact, the beauty of `dyndoc` is that it can process Markdown-formatted text and embed Stata output in the destination file. Let's see `dyndoc` in its full potential by adding Markdown text to our previous file. We still need to use dynamic tags to process the Stata code, but rather than using “-” to indicate Stata command names, variable names, etc., we will use two asterisks around each command and variable name. We also enclose Stata commands and tags in sets of four tildes to display the content in plain text. Our modified text file is shown here:

---

begin example2.txt

---

Using Stata dynamic tags

=====

I am going to examine fuel efficiency using **auto.dta**. First, I load the dataset:

~~~~

<<dd\_do>>

sysuse auto, clear

<</dd\_do>>

~~~~

Now I **summarize mpg**, but I only display the output, not the command:

~~~~

<<dd\_do: nocommands>>

summarize mpg

<</dd\_do>>

~~~~

---

end example2.txt

---

We copy this file to our current working directory and then convert it to an HTML file with `dyndoc`:

```
. copy http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/example2.txt .
. dyndoc example2.txt
```

This produces the following:



We could have also included a graph or Stata expression in the HTML file; see [RPT] [dyndoc](#) for a more detailed example.

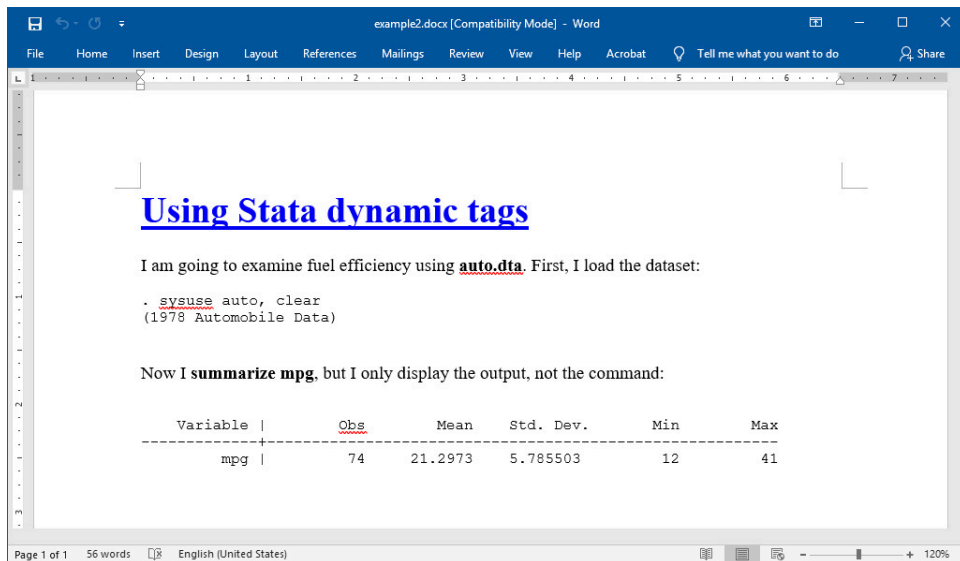


► Example 4: Create a Word document with Stata output

By default, [dyndoc](#) will create an HTML output file, but we could just as easily convert `example.txt` to a Word (`.docx`) document instead by specifying the `docx` option:

```
. dyndoc example2.txt, docx
```

This produces `example2.docx`, which looks like this:



Once you have created a Word document, you can also convert it to a PDF file; see [\[RPT\] docx2pdf](#).

The output files, `example2.html` and `example2.docx`, are available at <http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/>.

Above, we used `dyndoc` to embed the output from commands and to process Markdown-formatted text when we created an HTML file and a Word document. `dyndoc` uses the `markdown` command to convert the Markdown-formatted text to the HTML format. `markdown` can also be used independently to create HTML files and Word documents when the source file does not contain Stata dynamic tags.

## Also see

[\[RPT\] Dynamic tags](#) — Dynamic tags for text files

[\[RPT\] dyndoc](#) — Convert dynamic Markdown document to HTML or Word (.docx) document

[\[RPT\] dyntext](#) — Process Stata dynamic tags in text file

[\[RPT\] markdown](#) — Convert Markdown document to HTML file or Word (.docx) document

# Title

**Dynamic tags** — Dynamic tags for text files

DescriptionRemarksAlso see

## Description

Dynamic tags are instructions used by Stata’s dynamic documents commands, [dyndoc](#) and [dyntext](#), to perform a certain action, such as run a block of Stata code, insert the result of a Stata expression in text, export a Stata graph to an image file, or include a link to the image file.

## Remarks

Remarks are presented under the following headings:

- Descriptions of dynamic tags*
- Version control*
- Execute and include output from a block of Stata code*
- Include strings and values of scalar expressions in text*
- Include values of scalar expressions and formatted text in a .docx file*
- Export and include a Stata graph*
- Include a text file*
- Disable dynamic text processing*
- Skip contents based on condition*
- Remove contents*

## Descriptions of dynamic tags

Here is a list of available dynamic tags and a short description for each. The tag may be abbreviated; the minimum abbreviation is indicated by the underlined letters.

Dynamic tag	Description
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_version&gt;&gt;</code>	specify the minimum version required to convert the dynamic document
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_do&gt;&gt;</code>	execute a block of Stata code and optionally include its output
<code>&lt;&lt;/dd_do&gt;&gt;</code>	end <code>&lt;&lt;dd_do&gt;&gt;</code>
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_display&gt;&gt;</code>	include output of Stata expression as shown by Stata's <code>display</code> command
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_docx_display&gt;&gt;</code>	include output of Stata expression in a <code>.docx</code> file as shown by Stata's <code>display</code> command and format text within a block
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_graph&gt;&gt;</code>	export a Stata graph and include a link to the file
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_ignore&gt;&gt;</code>	disable processing of dynamic tags except <code>&lt;&lt;dd_remove&gt;&gt;</code>
<code>&lt;&lt;/dd_ignore&gt;&gt;</code>	end <code>&lt;&lt;dd_ignore&gt;&gt;</code>
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_include&gt;&gt;</code>	include the contents of a text file
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_remove&gt;&gt;</code>	remove the following text until <code>&lt;&lt;/dd_remove&gt;&gt;</code> is specified
<code>&lt;&lt;/dd_remove&gt;&gt;</code>	end <code>&lt;&lt;dd_remove&gt;&gt;</code>
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_skip_if&gt;&gt;</code>	skip text based on condition
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_skip_else&gt;&gt;</code>	skip text based on condition
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_skip_end&gt;&gt;</code>	end <code>&lt;&lt;dd_skip_if&gt;&gt;</code> block

`<<dd_docx_display>>` is only for use with `putdocx` `textblock` commands in a do-file.

Some tags must start at the beginning of a line, and the text in the same line after the tag is simply ignored. Other tags can be written in the middle of a line. The following table lists the required position in text for all tags.

Dynamic tag	Description
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_version&gt;&gt;</code>	beginning of a line, recommended at the start of a file
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_do&gt;&gt;</code>	beginning of a line
<code>&lt;&lt;/dd_do&gt;&gt;</code>	beginning of a line
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_display&gt;&gt;</code>	within a line
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_docx_display&gt;&gt;</code>	within a line
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_graph&gt;&gt;</code>	within a line
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_ignore&gt;&gt;</code>	beginning of a line
<code>&lt;&lt;/dd_ignore&gt;&gt;</code>	beginning of a line
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_include&gt;&gt;</code>	beginning of a line
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_remove&gt;&gt;</code>	within a line
<code>&lt;&lt;/dd_remove&gt;&gt;</code>	within a line
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_skip_if&gt;&gt;</code>	beginning of a line
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_skip_else&gt;&gt;</code>	beginning of a line
<code>&lt;&lt;dd_skip_end&gt;&gt;</code>	beginning of a line

Tags can have attributes. Attributes are modifiers of a tag's behavior. Attributes can be repeated, and the last one will take effect. For example, if you specify `<<dd_do: commands nocommands>>`, the commands will not be displayed because the attribute `nocommands` supersedes the previously

specified attribute commands. This is useful when you experiment with the behavior of attributes for the best output. Some attributes have values; for example, `graphname()` requires the name of the graph to be exported. If a tag has only one attribute and that attribute requires a value, then the attribute name is omitted and only the value is required; for example, the `dd_version` tag is used as `<<dd_version: an integer number>>`.

Version control

```
<<dd_version: version_number>>
```

The `<<dd_version>>` tag specifies the minimum version required to convert the source file. The version number is independent of Stata’s `version` command. The tag must be at the beginning of a new line. We recommend that the tag be placed at the beginning of the *srcfile*.  
The current version, and the default, is 2, and it is introduced as of the release of Stata 16. The current version number is also stored in `c(dyndoc_version)`.

Execute and include output from a block of Stata code

```
<<dd_do: attribute>>  
block of Stata code ...  
<</dd_do>>
```

The `<<dd_do>>` tag runs the block of Stata code, replacing the lines between `<<dd_do>>` and `<</dd_do>>` with Stata output. Both the start tag, `<<dd_do>>`, and the end tag, `<</dd_do>>`, must be at the beginning of new lines.

attribute	Description
<u>quietly</u>	suppress all output
<u>nocommands</u>	suppress printing of command
<u>nooutput</u>	suppress command output
<u>noprompt</u>	suppress the dot prompt

Include strings and values of scalar expressions in text

```
<<dd_display: display_directive>>
```

The `<<dd_display>>` tag executes Stata’s `display` command and then replaces the tag with its output. The tag cannot contain a line break or `>>`. Use `>>` (with a space in between) instead if you need to include `>>` in the *display\_directive*.  
The `<<dd_display>>` tag can be used multiple times inside a line of text. For example, say that we want to display the circumference of a circle of radius 1 up to the two digits after the decimal. Instead of computing the number and then copying and pasting the result into the text, we can write

```
2*1<<dd_display:%4.2f c(pi)>> = <<dd_display:%4.2f 2*1*c(pi)>>
```

which produces

```
2*1*3.14 = 6.28
```

## Include values of scalar expressions and formatted text in a .docx file

```
<<dd_docx_display text_options: display_directive>>
```

This tag includes expressions and formatted text within a block of text in a .docx file. It can only be used with text enclosed in `putdocx textblock` commands, as follows:

```
putdocx textblock begin
... text <<dd_docx_display directive>> text ...
putdocx textblock end
```

The `<<dd_docx_display>>` tag executes Stata's `display` command and then replaces the tag with its output. The output is formatted according to the [text\\_options](#) available with `putdocx text`. The tag cannot contain a line break or `>>`. If you need to include `>>` in the *display\_directive*, use the symbols with a space in between (`> >`).

The `<<dd_docx_display>>` tag can be used multiple times inside a line of text. For example, say that we want to display the circumference of a circle with radius 1 up to the two digits after the decimal. Instead of computing the number and then copying and pasting the result into a block of text, we can write

```
putdocx textblock begin
2*1*<<dd_docx_display bold:%4.2f c(pi)>> = <<dd_docx_display bold:%4.2f 2*1*c(pi)>>
putdocx textblock end
```

which formats the value of  $\pi$  and the product in bold and produces the following in the .docx file being created.

```
2*1*3.14 = 6.28
```

For another example demonstrating the use of this dynamic tag, see [Working with blocks of text](#) in [\[RPT\] putdocx paragraph](#).

## Export and include a Stata graph

```
<<dd_graph: attribute>>
```

The `<<dd_graph>>` tag exports a Stata graph and then includes a link to the exported image file in the target file.

<i>attribute</i>	Description
<code>saving(filename)</code>	export graph to <i>filename</i>
<code>replace</code>	replace the file if it already exists
<code>graphname(name)</code>	name of graph to be exported
<code>svg</code>	export graph as SVG
<code>png</code>	export graph as PNG
<code>pdf</code>	export graph as PDF
<code>eps</code>	export graph as EPS
<code>ps</code>	export graph as PS
<code>html</code>	output an HTML link
<code>markdown</code>	output a Markdown link; default is <code>html</code>
<code>pathonly</code>	output the path of the file; default is <code>html</code>
<code>alt(text)</code>	alternative text for the graph to be read by voice software; ignored if <code>pathonly</code> in effect
<code>height(#)</code>	height in pixels of the graph in HTML; ignored if <code>markdown</code> or <code>pathonly</code> in effect
<code>width(#)</code>	width in pixels of the graph in HTML; ignored if <code>markdown</code> or <code>pathonly</code> in effect
<code>relative</code>	use file path relative to the <i>targetfile</i> path specified in <code>dyndoc</code> or <code>dyntext</code> ; this is the default
<code>absolute</code>	use absolute path in the link; default is <code>relative</code>
<code>basepath(path)</code>	use <i>path</i> as base directory where graph files will be exported; default is the current working directory if it is not specified
<code>nourlencode</code>	do not encode the path to a percent-encoded URL; ignored if <code>html</code> or <code>markdown</code> in effect

If `graphname(name)` is not specified, the topmost graph is used. You can use the default name “Graph” to export the graph without the name.

For paths specified in the `saving()` or `basepath()` attributes, a single backslash (\) is interpreted as an escape character rather than as the directory separator character. When working on Windows, we recommend using a forward slash (/) as the directory separator character (for example, `C:/mypath/myfile`); otherwise, you must use a double backslash (for example, `C:\\mypath\\myfile`).

If `saving(filename)` is not specified, a filename will be constructed based on the graph name.

If none of `.svg`, `.png`, or `.pdf` is specified, the `saving(filename)` is checked first; if the name specified in `saving(filename)` has the extension of `.svg`, `.png`, or `.pdf`, then the graph will be exported in the format corresponding to the extension. For example, the dynamic tag

```
<<dd_graph:saving(gr1.png) graphname(gr1)>>
```

produces

```

```



Otherwise, the type `.svg` will be used as in

```
<<dd_graph:saving(gr1.pgg) graphname(gr1)>>
```

which produces

```

```

If `markdown` is specified, a Markdown link will be produced. For example, the dynamic tag

```
<<dd_graph:saving(gr1.svg) graphname(gr1) markdown>>
```

produces

```

```

You may use `pathonly` if you want an HTML link with more attributes than `html` or `markdown` can provide or if you want to use the path in a different target file type such as `LATEX`.

By default, the path is outputted as a percent-encoded URL. For example, the dynamic tag

```
<<dd_graph:saving("gr 1.svg") graphname(gr1) pathonly>>
```

produces

```
gr%201.svg
```

You may use `nourlencode` to disable the encoding process as in

```
"<<dd_graph:saving("gr 1.svg") graphname(gr1) pathonly nourlencode>>"
```

which produces

```
"gr 1.svg"
```

The `<<dd_graph>>` tag can be used inside a line of text.

## Include a text file

```
<<dd_include: filename>>
```

The `<<dd_include>>` tag replaces the tag with the contents of the specified text file. The text file is included as is. The tag must be at the beginning of a new line. The *filename* itself may contain Stata macros, but not the file contents.

## Disable dynamic text processing

```
<<dd_ignore>> and </dd_ignore>>
```

The `<<dd_ignore>>` tag causes `dyntext` and `dyndoc` to ignore the dynamic tag processing, starting from the next line until the line right before a `</dd_ignore>>` tag. Both the beginning and ending tags must be at the beginning of a line. The only tag it does not affect is the `<<dd_remove>>` tag.

## Skip contents based on condition

```
<<dd_skip_if: Stata expression>>  
lines of text ...  
<<dd_skip_end>>
```

or

```
<<dd_skip_if: Stata expression>>  
lines of text ...  
<<dd_skip_else>>  
lines of text ...  
<<dd_skip_end>>
```

`<<dd_skip_if: Stata expression>>` evaluates the *Stata expression*; if it evaluates to true (anything but 0), the lines before the next `<<dd_skip_end>>` are skipped. If there is a `<<dd_skip_else>>`, the lines before `<<dd_skip_else>>` are skipped, and the lines between `<<dd_skip_else>>` and `<<dd_skip_end>>` are processed as usual.

If the *Stata expression* evaluates to false (0), the lines before the next `<<dd_skip_end>>` are not skipped. If there is a `<<dd_skip_else>>`, the lines before `<<dd_skip_else>>` are not skipped, and the lines between `<<dd_skip_else>>` and `<<dd_skip_end>>` are skipped.

## Remove contents

```
... <<dd_remove>>text to remove ...  
lines of text to remove ...  
text to remove ... <</dd_remove>> ...
```

The `<<dd_remove>>` and `<</dd_remove>>` tags remove all the contents between the two tags from the resulting target file. The tags can be used inside a line of text.

`<<dd_remove>>` is a postprocessing tag, which means it is processed after all other tags.

## Also see

[RPT] **dyndoc** — Convert dynamic Markdown document to HTML or Word (.docx) document

[RPT] **dyntext** — Process Stata dynamic tags in text file

[RPT] **markdown** — Convert Markdown document to HTML file or Word (.docx) document

[Description](#)  
[References](#)

[Quick start](#)  
[Also see](#)

[Syntax](#)

[Options](#)

[Remarks and examples](#)

## Description

dyndoc converts a dynamic Markdown document—a document containing both formatted text and Stata commands—to an HTML file or Word document. Stata processes the Markdown text and Stata dynamic tags (see [\[RPT\] Dynamic tags](#)) and creates the output file. Markdown is a simple markup language with a formatting syntax based on plain text. It is easily converted to an output format such as HTML. Stata dynamic tags allow Stata commands, output, and graphs to be interleaved with Markdown text.

If you want to convert a Markdown document without Stata dynamic tags to an HTML file or Word document, see [\[RPT\] markdown](#). If you want to convert a plain text file containing Stata dynamic tags to a plain text output file, see [\[RPT\] dyntext](#). If you want to convert an HTML file to a Word document, see [\[RPT\] html2docx](#).

## Quick start

Convert text file `myfile.txt` with Stata dynamic tags and Markdown formatting to an HTML file with Stata output saved as `myfile.html`

```
dyndoc myfile.txt
```

As above, but save the HTML file as `mydoc.html`

```
dyndoc myfile.txt, saving(mydoc.html)
```

As above, and overwrite the existing `mydoc.html`

```
dyndoc myfile.txt, saving(mydoc.html) replace
```

Convert `myfile.txt` to a Word document saved as `myfile.docx`

```
dyndoc myfile.txt, docx
```

# Syntax

```
dyndoc srcfile [arguments] [, options]
```

*srcfile* is a plain text file containing Markdown-formatted text and [Stata dynamic tags](#).  
*arguments* are stored in the local macros '1', '2', and so on for use in *srcfile*; see [\[U\] 16.4.1 Argument passing](#).  
You may enclose *srcfile* and *targetfile* in double quotes and must do so if they contain blanks or other special characters.

<i>options</i>	Description
<code>saving(<i>targetfile</i>)</code>	specify the target HTML file or Word (.docx) document to be saved
<code>replace</code>	replace the target HTML file or Word (.docx) document if it already exists
<code>hardwrap</code>	replace hard wraps (actual line breaks) with the   tag in an HTML file or with line breaks in a Word (.docx) document
<code>nomsg</code>	suppress message with a link to <i>targetfile</i>
<code>nostop</code>	do not stop when an error occurs
<code>embedimage</code>	embed image files as Base64 binary data in the target HTML file
<code>docx</code>	output a Word (.docx) document instead of an HTML file

# Options

`saving(targetfile)` specifies the target file to be saved. If `saving()` is not specified, the target filename is constructed using the source filename (*srcfile*) with the .html extension or with the .docx extension if `docx` is specified. If the *targetfile* has the .docx extension, the `docx` option is assumed even if it is not specified.

`replace` specifies that the target file be replaced if it already exists.

`hardwrap` specifies that hard wraps (actual line breaks) in the Markdown document be replaced with the <br> tag in the HTML file or with a line break in the Word (.docx) document if the `docx` option is specified.

`nomsg` suppresses the message that contains a link to the target file.

`nostop` allows the document to continue being processed even if an error occurs. By default, `dyndoc` stops processing the document if an error occurs. The error can be caused by either a malformed dynamic tag or Stata code executed within the tag.

`embedimage` allows image files to be embedded as data URI (Base64-encoded binary data) in the HTML file. The supported image file types are portable network graphics (.png), JPEG (.jpg), tagged image file format (.tif), and graphics interchange format (.gif). This option cannot be used to embed SVG and PDF image file types.

The image must be specified in a Markdown link; you cannot embed images specified by URLs. This option is ignored if `docx` is specified.

`docx` specifies that the target file be saved in Microsoft Word (.docx) format. If the target file has the .docx extension, the `docx` option is implied. The conversion process consists of first producing an HTML file and then using [html2docx](#) to produce the final Word document.

## Remarks and examples

A dynamic document contains both static narrative and dynamic tags. Dynamic tags are instructions for dyndoc to perform a certain action, such as run a block of Stata code, insert the result of a Stata expression in text, export a Stata graph to an image file, or include a link to the image file. Any changes in the data or in Stata will change the output as the document is created. The main advantages of using dynamic documents are

- results in the document come from executing commands instead of being copied from Stata and pasted into the document;
- no need to maintain parallel do-files; and
- any changes in data or in Stata are reflected in the final document when it is created.

### ► Example 1: Converting a dynamic document to an HTML file

Let us consider an example. Suppose that we have `dyndoc_ex.txt` with the following Markdown-formatted text that includes [Stata dynamic tags](#).

---

begin dyndoc\_ex.txt

---

```
<<dd_version: 2>>
<<dd_include: header.txt >>

Using Stata dynamic tags in a text file with the dyndoc command
=====

Let us consider an example where we study the mpg and weight variables
in auto.dta. In our examples below, we will first write the commands so
that they will be displayed in our target HTML file. Then, we will write the
commands so that Stata will process the Stata dynamic tags, displaying the
results of the Stata commands in the target HTML file.

We first use the sysuse command to load the dataset and then describe
the data using the describe command.
~~~~

<<dd_ignore>>
<<dd_do>>
sysuse auto, clear
describe
<</dd_do>>
<</dd_ignore>>
~~~~

This produces the following Stata results:
~~~~

<<dd_do>>
sysuse auto, clear
describe
<</dd_do>>
~~~~

Now, we want to check if mpg is always greater than 0 and less than 100.
We use the assert command to perform the check. In this case, we do not
want to include any output in the target HTML file, so we use the quietly
attribute to modify the behavior of the dd_do Stata dynamic tag.
~~~~

<<dd_ignore>>
<<dd_do:quietly>>
assert mpg > 0 & mpg < 100
<</dd_do>>
<</dd_ignore>>

<<dd_do:quietly>>
assert mpg > 0 & mpg < 100
```

```
<</dd_do>>
```

```
~~~~~
If the data do not satisfy the conditions, dyndoc will fail with an error
message, which will occur if we run the same assert command in a do-file.
```

```
Next, we want to summarize the weight variable:
```

```
~~~~~
<<dd_ignore>>
<<dd_do>>
summarize weight
<</dd_do>>
<</dd_ignore>>
~~~~~
```

```
This produces the following in the target HTML file:
```

```
~~~~~
<<dd_do>>
summarize weight
<</dd_do>>
~~~~~
```

```
We want to use the minimum and maximum values of weight in a sentence.
Instead of copying and pasting the numbers from the summarize output, we can
use the dd_display Stata dynamic tag with the r(min) and r(max)
stored results:
```

```
~~~~~
<<dd_ignore>>
The variable weight has minimum value <<dd_display: %4.2f 'r(min)''>> and
has maximum value <<dd_display: %4.2f 'r(max)''>>.
<</dd_ignore>>
~~~~~
```

```
This produces the following in the target HTML file:
```

```
~~~~~
> The variable weight has minimum value <<dd_display: %4.2f 'r(min)''>>
and has maximum value <<dd_display: %4.2f 'r(max)''>>.
~~~~~
```

```
The dd_display dynamic tag uses the display command to evaluate
expressions. It can be used as a calculator. For example, if we want to
include the range = max - min in a sentence, instead of calculating the
number and then copying and pasting it, we can use
```

```
~~~~~
<<dd_ignore>>
The variable weight has range <<dd_display: %4.2f 'r(max)''-r(min)''>>.
<</dd_ignore>>
~~~~~
```

```
which produces the following in the target HTML file:
```

```
~~~~~
> The variable weight has range <<dd_display: %4.2f 'r(max)''-r(min)''>>.
~~~~~
```

```
Now, we want to graph mpg and weight using a scatterplot. We use the
dd_do tag with the nooutput attribute to generate the scatterplot
first. The nooutput attribute leaves the command in the output only,
```

```
~~~~~
<<dd_ignore>>
<<dd_do:nooutput>>
scatter mpg weight, mcolor(blue%50)
<</dd_do>>
<</dd_ignore>>
~~~~~
```

```
which generates a scatterplot of mpg and weight with 50% opacity
color markers.
```

```
~~~~~
<<dd_do:nooutput>>
scatter mpg weight, mcolor(blue%50)
<</dd_do>>
```

```
~~~~
Now, we want to export the graph to a file and include an image link to the
file.
~~~~

<<dd_ignore>>
<<dd_graph: sav("graph.svg") alt("scatter mpg weight") replace height(400)>>
<</dd_ignore>>
~~~~

This produces a graph of 400 pixels high.
<<dd_graph: sav("graph.svg") alt("scatter mpg weight") replace height(400)>>
~~~~
end dyndoc_ex.txt
```

## □ Technical note

We use four tildes in a row, ~~~~, in our source file around parts of the document that we want to appear in plain text, such as Stata commands and output. Without the ~~~~, Stata's output would be interpreted as HTML in the final document and would not look as it should. This applies regardless of whether we are creating an HTML file or a Word document.



You will notice that we used the <<dd\_include>> dynamic tag to include the `header.txt` file. The `header.txt` file contains HTML code to include at the top of our target HTML file. It refers to the `stmarkdown.css` file, which is a stylesheet that defines how the HTML document is to be formatted. This formatting would also apply if we were creating a Word document. We can copy these files and `dyndoc_ex.txt` to our working directory by typing

```
. copy http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/header.txt .
. copy http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/stmarkdown.css .
. copy http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/dyndoc_ex.txt .
```

To generate the target HTML file in Stata, we type

```
. dyndoc dyndoc_ex.txt
```

The HTML file `dyndoc_ex.html` is saved. Here is a portion of this file:

dyndoc\_ex.html

https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/dyndoc\_ex.html

AppsStataOther bookmarks

Using Stata dynamic tags in a text file with the dyndoc command

Let us consider an example where we study the **mpg** and **weight** variables in **auto.dta**. In our examples below, we will first write the commands so that they will be displayed in our target HTML file. Then, we will write the commands so that Stata will process the Stata dynamic tags, displaying the results of the Stata commands in the target HTML file.

We first use the **sysuse** command to load the dataset and then describe the data using the **describe** command.

```
<<dd_do>>
sysuse auto, clear
describe
<</dd_do>>
```

This produces the following Stata results:

```
. sysuse auto, clear
(1978 Automobile Data)

. describe

Contains data from /usr/local/stata16/ado/base/a/auto.dta
   obs:                74                1978 Automobile Data
  vars:                 12                13 Apr 2018 17:45
                                         (_dta has notes)

-----
variable name    storage   display   value
variable name    type     format    label    variable label
-----
make             str18    %-18s
price            int      %8.0gc
mpg              int      %8.0g
rep78            int      %8.0g
headroom         float    %6.1f
trunk            int      %8.0g
weight           int      %8.0gc
length           int      %8.0g
turn             int      %8.0g
displacement     int      %8.0g
gear_ratio       float    %6.2f
foreign          byte     %8.0g    origin  Car type
-----

Sorted by: foreign
```

You can see the whole file at [https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/dyndoc\\_ex.html](https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/dyndoc_ex.html).





## ❑ Technical note

Because `quietly` and `capture` suppress the results of the command from being produced, you should not use these prefix commands with Stata code to be converted by dyndoc.



## ➤ Example 2: Converting a dynamic document to a Word document

As above, we could easily create a Word document from the dynamic text file used in [example 1](#) by specifying the `docx` option.

```
. dyndoc dyndoc_ex.txt, docx
```

This creates `dyndoc_ex.docx`, shown below:

**Using Stata dynamic tags in a text file with the dyndoc command**

Let us consider an example where we study the `mpg` and `weight` variables in `auto.dta`. In our examples below, we will first write the commands so that they will be displayed in our target HTML file. Then, we will write the commands so that Stata will process the Stata dynamic tags, displaying the results of the Stata commands in the target HTML file.

We first use the `sysuse` command to load the dataset and then describe the data using the `describe` command.

```
<<dd_do>>
sysuse auto, clear
describe
<</dd_do>>
```

This produces the following Stata results:

```
. sysuse auto, clear
(1978 Automobile Data)

. describe
```

Contains data from `/usr/local/statal6/ado/base/a/auto.dta`

```
obs:      74      1978 Automobile Data
vars:     12      13 Apr 2018 17:45
              (_dta has notes)
```

variable name	storage type	display format	value label	variable label
make	str18	%-18s		Make and Model
price	int	%8.0gc		Price
mpg	int	%8.0g		Mileage (mpg)
rep78	int	%8.0g		Repair Record 1978
headroom	float	%6.1f		Headroom (in.)
trunk	int	%8.0g		Trunk space (cu. ft.)
weight	int	%8.0gc		Weight (lbs.)
length	int	%8.0g		Length (in.)
turn	int	%8.0g		Turn Circle (ft.)
displacement	int	%8.0g		Displacement (cu. in.)
gear_ratio	float	%6.2f		Gear Ratio

Page 1 of 4   596 words   English (United States)   120%

Specifying arguments in dyndoc allows even more flexibility. For instance, `dyndoc_ex.txt` a b c passes a, b, and c in local macros '1', '2', and '3', which can be used in the text file. Below, we demonstrate how to use arguments with dyndoc to create multiple HTML files from a single text file.

### ► Example 3: Specifying arguments

Suppose that we create histograms on a regular basis. To reduce our workload, we create a general text file that creates histograms for pairs of variables, which we specify as arguments to dyndoc. This way we do not create a new text file every time we create new histograms. To generalize the text file, we refer to macro 1 when loading the dataset, so that we may create histograms using any dataset we specify. We refer to macros 2 and 3 in the `<<dd_do>>` tags, instead of referring to actual variable names, because these will change. We use the `<<dd_display>>` dynamic tag to display the contents of the macros in the output HTML file, while suppressing the command lines with the `nocommands` attribute. Our text file is shown below:

---

```
begin dyndoc_ex2.txt

<<dd_version: 2>>
The distribution of <<dd_display: "'2'">> and <<dd_display: "'3'">>
=====
Let's look at the histograms for <<dd_display: "'2'">> and <<dd_display: "'3'">>.
~~~~
. use <<dd_display: "'1'">>, clear
~~~~
~~~~
<<dd_do: nocommands>>
use '1'.dta, clear
<</dd_do>>
~~~~
~~~~
. histogram <<dd_display: "'2'">>, freq
~~~~
~~~~
<<dd_do: nocommands>>
histogram '2', freq
<</dd_do>>
~~~~
<<dd_graph>>
~~~~
. histogram <<dd_display: "'3'">>, freq
~~~~
~~~~
<<dd_do: nocommands>>
histogram '3', freq
<</dd_do>>
~~~~
<<dd_graph>>
```

---

end dyndoc\_ex2.txt

---

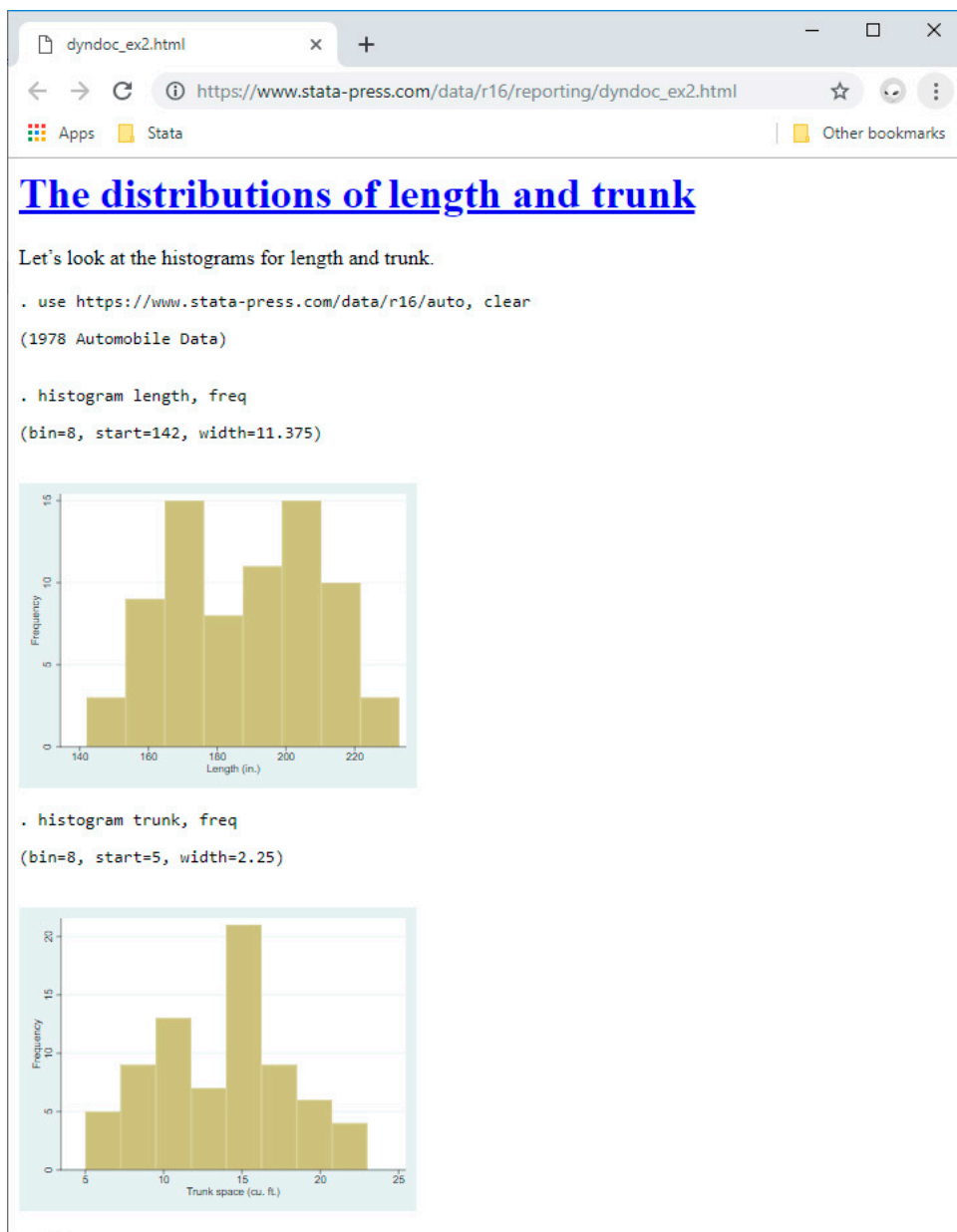
You can copy this file to your working directory by typing

```
. copy http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/dyndoc\_ex2.txt .
```

Now we issue dyndoc with three arguments: a link to `auto.dta` followed by variable names `length` and `trunk`.

```
. dyndoc dyndoc_ex2.txt "https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/auto" length trunk
```

This creates dyndoc\_ex2.html, shown below:

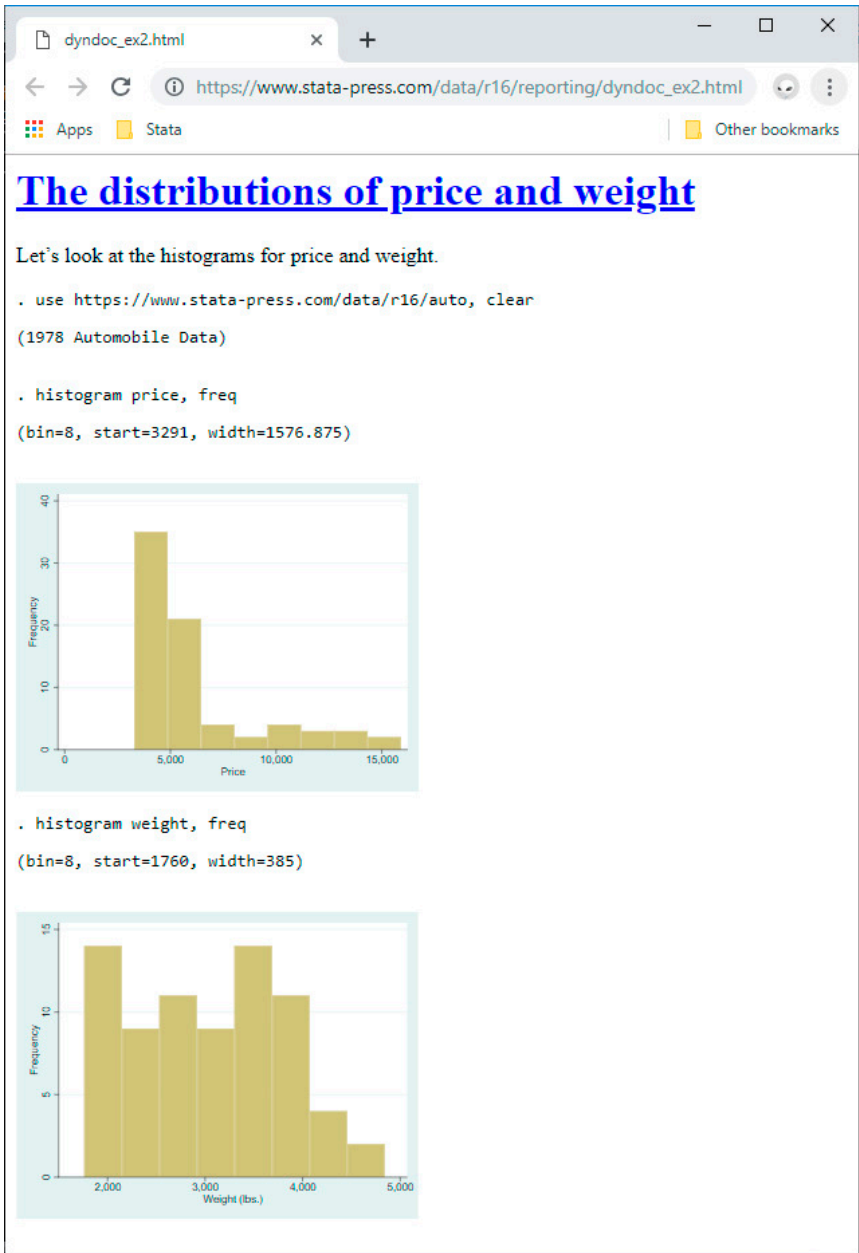


We optionally displayed the information on bin size, width, and starting values that **histogram** reports, but we could suppress that as well by specifying the **quietly** attribute instead.

If we want to create histograms with other variables, we do not have to edit our text file. We can simply issue dyndoc with the corresponding dataset and variable names to create this file. This is as easy as

```
. dyndoc dyndoc_ex2.txt "https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/auto" price weight,  
> replace
```

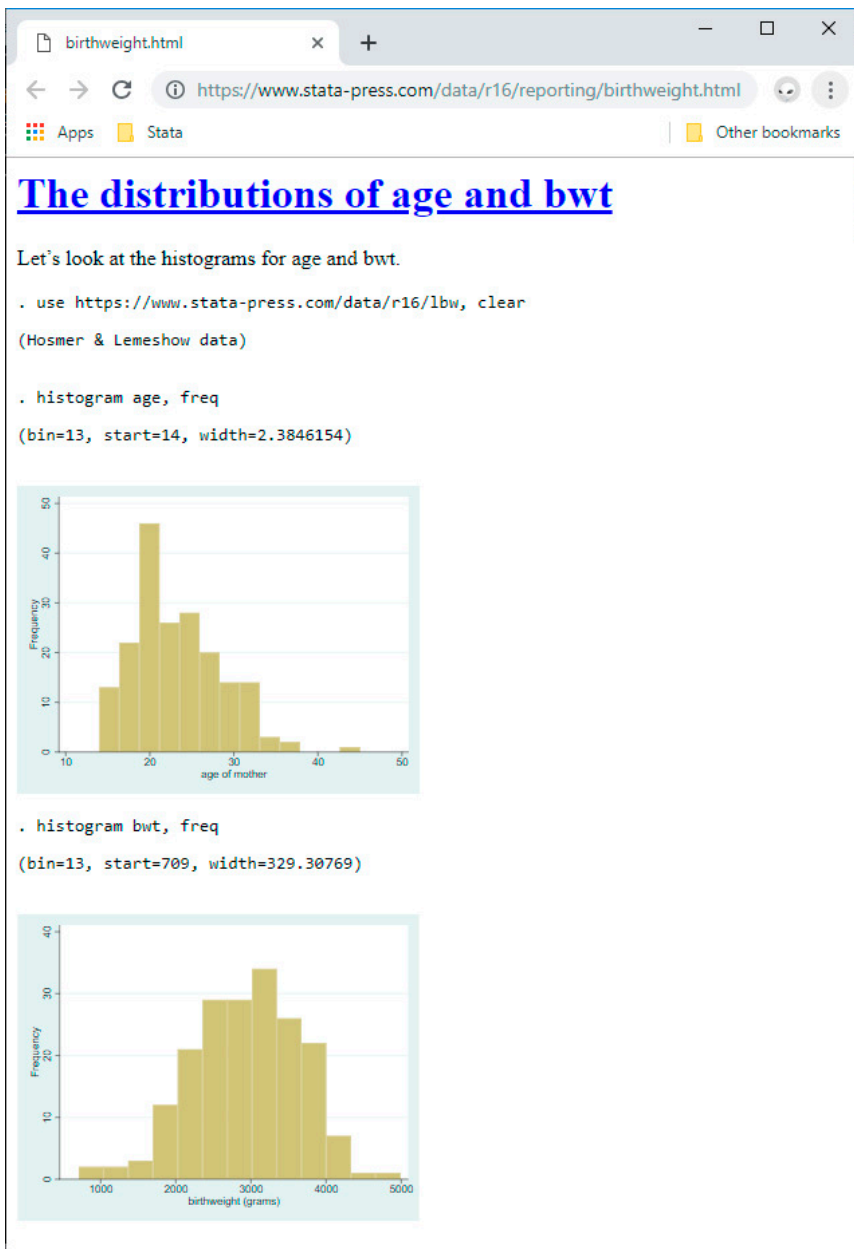
which produces the following:



Next we use the data from [Hosmer, Lemeshow, and Sturdivant \(2013, 24\)](#) to create histograms for mother's age and the baby's birthweight, bwt.

```
. dyndoc dyndoc_ex2.txt "https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/lbw" age bwt,  
> saving(birthweight.html)
```

This produces the following:



Whether you are creating the same graphics for different sets of variables or you need to create the same reports using different datasets, you can use arguments with `dyndoc` to streamline your work process.



## References

- Gillman, M. S. 2018. [Some commands to help produce Rich Text Files from Stata](#). *Stata Journal* 18: 197–205.
- Hosmer, D. W., Jr., S. A. Lemeshow, and R. X. Sturdivant. 2013. *Applied Logistic Regression*. 3rd ed. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.
- Jakubowski, M., and A. Pokropek. 2019. [piaactools: A program for data analysis with PIAAC data](#). *Stata Journal* 19: 112–128.
- Jann, B. 2017. [Creating HTML or Markdown documents from within Stata using webdoc](#). *Stata Journal* 17: 3–38.
- Rodríguez, G. 2017. [Literate data analysis with Stata and Markdown](#). *Stata Journal* 17: 600–618.

## Also see

- [RPT] [Dynamic tags](#) — Dynamic tags for text files
- [RPT] [dyntext](#) — Process Stata dynamic tags in text file
- [RPT] [markdown](#) — Convert Markdown document to HTML file or Word (.docx) document

Description

dyntext converts a dynamic text file—a file containing both plain text and Stata commands—to an output file in text format. Stata processes the Stata dynamic tags (see [RPT] **Dynamic tags**) in the dynamic text file and creates the output text file.

If you want to convert a dynamic text file to an HTML or Word (.docx) document, see [RPT] **dyndoc**. If you want to convert a Markdown document to an HTML or Word document, see [RPT] **markdown**.

Quick start

Convert text file myfile.txt with Stata dynamic tags to a text file output.txt with Stata output  
dyntext myfile.txt, saving(output.txt)

As above, and overwrite the existing output.txt  
dyntext myfile.txt, saving(output.txt) replace

Syntax

dyntext *srcfile* [*arguments*], saving(*targetfile*) [*options*]

*srcfile* is a plain text file containing **Stata dynamic tags**. *srcfile* and *targetfile* may be any text format (.txt, .html, .do).

*arguments* are stored in the local macros '1', '2', and so on for use in *srcfile*; see [U] **16.4.1 Argument passing**.

You may enclose *srcfile* and *targetfile* in double quotes and must do so if they contain blanks or other special characters.

<i>options</i>	Description
* <u>s</u> aving( <i>targetfile</i> )	specify the target file to be saved
<u>r</u> eplace	replaces the target file if it already exists
<u>n</u> oremove	do not process <<dd_remove>> and <</dd_remove>> <b>dynamic tags</b>
<u>n</u> ostop	do not stop when an error occurs

\* saving(*targetfile*) is required.

## Options

`saving(targetfile)` specifies the target file to be saved. `saving()` is required.

`replace` specifies that the target file be replaced if it already exists.

`noremove` specifies that `<<dd_remove>>` and `<</dd_remove>>` tags not be processed.

`nostop` allows the document to continue being processed even if an error occurs. By default, `dyntext` stops processing the document if an error occurs. The error can be caused either by a malformed dynamic tag or by executing Stata code within the tag.

## Remarks and examples

A dynamic document contains both static narrative and dynamic tags. Dynamic tags are instructions for `dyntext` to perform a certain action, such as run a block of Stata code, insert the result of a Stata expression in text, export a Stata graph to an image file, or include a link to the image file. Any changes in the data or in Stata will change the output as the document is created. The main advantages of using dynamic documents are

- results in the document come from executing commands instead of being copied from Stata and pasted into the document;
- no need to maintain parallel do-files; and
- any changes in data or in Stata are reflected in the final document when it is created.

### ► Example 1

Let's consider an example. Suppose that we have `dyntext_ex.txt` with the following text that includes [Stata dynamic tags](#). Because we are writing in plain text, we use `-` to indicate Stata command names, variable names, etc.

---

```
begin dyntext_ex.txt

<<dd_version: 2>>
Using Stata dynamic tags in a text file with the -dyntext- command
=====

Let us consider an example where we study the -mpg- and -weight- variables in
-auto.dta-. In our examples below, we will first write the commands so that
they will be displayed in our output text file. Then, we will write the
commands so that Stata will process the Stata dynamic tags, displaying the
results of the Stata commands in the output text file.

We first use the -sysuse- command to load the dataset and then describe
the data using the -describe- command.

<<dd_ignore>>
<<dd_do>>
sysuse auto, clear
describe
<</dd_do>>
<</dd_ignore>>

This produces the following Stata results:

<<dd_do>>
sysuse auto, clear
describe
<</dd_do>>

Now, we want to check if -mpg- is always greater than 0 and less than 100.
We use the -assert- command to perform the check. In this case, we do not
```



want to include any output in the output text file, so we use the `-quietly-` attribute to modify the behavior of the `-dd_do-` Stata dynamic tag.

```
<<dd_ignore>>
<<dd_do:quietly>>
assert mpg > 0 & mpg < 100
<</dd_do>>
<</dd_ignore>>

<<dd_do:quietly>>
assert mpg > 0 & mpg < 100
<</dd_do>>
```

If the data do not satisfy the conditions, `-dyntext-` will fail with an error message, which will occur if we run the same `-assert-` command in a `do-file`.

Next, we want to summarize the `-weight-` variable:

```
<<dd_ignore>>
<<dd_do>>
summarize weight
<</dd_do>>
<</dd_ignore>>
```

This produces the following in the output text file:

```
<<dd_do>>
summarize weight
<</dd_do>>
```

We want to use the minimum and maximum values of `-weight-` in a sentence. Instead of copying and pasting the numbers from the `-summarize-` output, we can use the `-dd_display-` Stata dynamic tag with the `-r(min)-` and `-r(max)-` stored results

```
<<dd_ignore>>
The variable weight has minimum value <<dd_display: %4.2f 'r(min)''>> and
has maximum value <<dd_display: %4.2f 'r(max)''>>.
<</dd_ignore>>
```

which produces the following in the output text file:

```
> The variable weight has minimum value <<dd_display: %4.2f 'r(min)''>>
and has maximum value <<dd_display: %4.2f 'r(max)''>>.
```

The `-dd_display-` dynamic tag uses Stata's `-display-` command to evaluate expressions. It can be used as a calculator. For example, if we want to include the `range = max - min` in a sentence, instead of calculating the number and then copying and pasting it, we can use

```
<<dd_ignore>>
The variable weight has range <<dd_display: %4.2f 'r(max)''-'r(min)''>>.
<</dd_ignore>>
```

which produces the following in the output text file:

```
> The variable weight has range <<dd_display: %4.2f 'r(max)''-'r(min)''>>.
```

---

end dyntext\_ex.txt

We can copy this file to our working directory by typing

```
. copy http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/dyntext_ex.txt .
```

To generate the output file in Stata, we then type

```
. dyntext dyntext_ex.txt, saving(dyntext_res.txt)
```

which produces the following:

Using Stata dynamic tags in a text file with the `-dyntext-` command  
=====

Let us consider an example where we study the `-mpg-` and `-weight-` variables in `-auto.dta-`. In our examples below, we will first write the commands so that they will be displayed in our output text file. Then, we will write the commands so that Stata will process the Stata dynamic tags, displaying the results of the Stata commands in the output text file.

We first use the `-sysuse-` command to load the dataset and then describe the data using the `-describe-` command.

```
<<dd_do>>
sysuse auto, clear
describe
<</dd_do>>
```

This produces the following Stata results:

```
. sysuse auto, clear
(1978 Automobile Data)
. describe
Contains data from /usr/local/stata16/ado/base/a/auto.dta
  obs:                74                1978 Automobile Data
  vars:                12                13 Apr 2018 17:45
                                      (_dta has notes)
```

-----				
variable name	storage type	display format	value label	variable label
-----				
make	str18	%-18s		Make and Model
price	int	%8.0gc		Price
mpg	int	%8.0g		Mileage (mpg)
rep78	int	%8.0g		Repair Record 1978
headroom	float	%6.1f		Headroom (in.)
trunk	int	%8.0g		Trunk space (cu. ft.)
weight	int	%8.0gc		Weight (lbs.)
length	int	%8.0g		Length (in.)
turn	int	%8.0g		Turn Circle (ft.)
displacement	int	%8.0g		Displacement (cu. in.)
gear_ratio	float	%6.2f		Gear Ratio
foreign	byte	%8.0g	origin	Car type
-----				

Sorted by: foreign

Now, we want to check if `-mpg-` is always greater than 0 and less than 100. We use the `-assert-` command to perform the check. In this case, we do not want to include any output in the output text file, so we use the `-quietly-` attribute to modify the behavior of the `-dd_do-` Stata dynamic tag.

```
<<dd_do:quietly>>
assert mpg > 0 & mpg < 100
<</dd_do>>
```

If the data do not satisfy the conditions, `-dyntext-` will fail with an error message, which will occur if we run the same `-assert-` command in a do-file.

Next, we want to summarize the `-weight-` variable:

```
<<dd_do>>
summarize weight
<</dd_do>>
```

This produces the following in the output text file:

Variable	Obs	Mean	Std. Dev.	Min	Max
-----+-----					
weight	74	3019.459	777.1936	1760	4840

We want to use the minimum and maximum values of `-weight-` in a sentence. Instead of copying and pasting the numbers from the `-summarize-` output, we can use the `-dd_display-` Stata dynamic tag with the `-r(min)-` and `-r(max)-` stored results

The variable `weight` has minimum value  $\llcorner\llcorner\text{dd\_display: } \%4.2f \text{ 'r(min)'}\gg$  and has maximum value  $\llcorner\llcorner\text{dd\_display: } \%4.2f \text{ 'r(max)'}\gg$ .

which produces the following in the output text file:

```
> The variable weight has minimum value 1760.00
and has maximum value 4840.00.
```

The `-dd_display-` dynamic tag uses Stata's `-display-` command to evaluate expressions. It can be used as a calculator. For example, if we want to include the `range = max - min` in a sentence, instead of calculating the number and then copying and pasting it, we can use

The variable `weight` has range  $\llcorner\llcorner\text{dd\_display: } \%4.2f \text{ 'r(max)'} - \text{'r(min)'}\gg$ .

which produces the following in the output text file:

```
> The variable weight has range 3080.00.
```

---

end dyntext\_res.txt



## □ Technical note

Because [quietly](#) and [capture](#) suppress the results of the command from being produced, you should not use these prefix commands with Stata code to be converted by `dyntext`.



## References

- Gillman, M. S. 2018. [Some commands to help produce Rich Text Files from Stata](#). *Stata Journal* 18: 197–205.
- Jann, B. 2016. [Creating LaTeX documents from within Stata using texdoc](#). *Stata Journal* 16: 245–263.

## Also see

- [RPT] [Dynamic documents intro](#) — Introduction to dynamic documents
- [RPT] [Dynamic tags](#) — Dynamic tags for text files
- [RPT] [dyndoc](#) — Convert dynamic Markdown document to HTML or Word (.docx) document
- [RPT] [markdown](#) — Convert Markdown document to HTML file or Word (.docx) document

# Title

html2docx — Convert an HTML file to a Word (.docx) document

Description

Quick start

Syntax

Options

Remarks and examples

Also see

## Description

html2docx converts an HTML file to a Word (.docx) document. The HTML file can be either a file on the local disk or a URL on a remote website.

## Quick start

Convert HTML file myfile.html to a Word document saved as myfile.docx

```
html2docx myfile
```

As above, but save the Word document as mydoc.docx

```
html2docx myfile, saving(mydoc)
```

As above, and overwrite the existing mydoc.docx

```
html2docx myfile, saving(mydoc) replace
```

## Syntax

```
html2docx srcfile [ , options ]
```

*srcfile* is an HTML file, either a local file or a URL. If *srcfile* is specified without an extension, .html is assumed. If *srcfile* contains embedded spaces or other special characters, enclose it in double quotes.

<i>options</i>	Description
<u>s</u> aving( <i>targetfile</i> )	specify the target Word (.docx) document to be saved
<u>r</u> eplace	replace the target Word (.docx) document if it already exists
<u>n</u> omsg	suppress message with link to <i>targetfile</i>
<u>b</u> ase( <i>string</i> )	specify the base directory or base URL for relative links in <i>srcfile</i>

## Options

saving(*targetfile*) specifies the target Word (.docx) document file to be saved. If *targetfile* is specified without an extension, .docx is assumed. If *targetfile* contains embedded spaces or other special characters, enclose it in double quotes. If saving() is not specified, the target filename is constructed using the source filename (*srcfile*) with the .docx extension. saving() is required if the *srcfile* is a URL.

`replace` specifies that the target Word (.docx) document be replaced if it already exists.

`nomsg` suppresses the message that contains a link to the target file.

`base(string)` specifies the base directory or the base URL for the relative links in the *srcfile*.

## Remarks and examples

`html2docx` converts HTML files to Word (.docx) documents. It attempts to preserve the styles of various HTML elements in the .docx file. However, for some HTML elements, there is no direct translation for a .docx file. For instance, an apostrophe in an HTML file may be replaced with another character in the .docx file. Thus, your target Word document may require some cleaning after the `html2docx` conversion.

`html2docx` expects a valid HTML file—one that contains essential HTML elements such as `<!DOCTYPE html>`, `<html>`, `<head>`, and `<body>`. If the HTML file is not valid, `html2docx` will go through a tidying process to attempt to make it valid. `html2docx` will produce an error message if this tidying process fails. You may check whether an HTML file is valid by using the W3C online Markup Validation Service at [https://validator.w3.org/#validate\\_by\\_upload+with\\_options](https://validator.w3.org/#validate_by_upload+with_options).

If you are working with a Markdown-formatted text file, you can convert this file directly to a Word document by specifying the `docx` option with `markdown`; see [RPT] [markdown](#). Similarly, you can use `dyndoc` to convert a text file with Stata commands and Markdown-formatted text to a Word document with Stata output; see [RPT] [dyndoc](#).

### ► Example 1: Converting an HTML file to a Word document

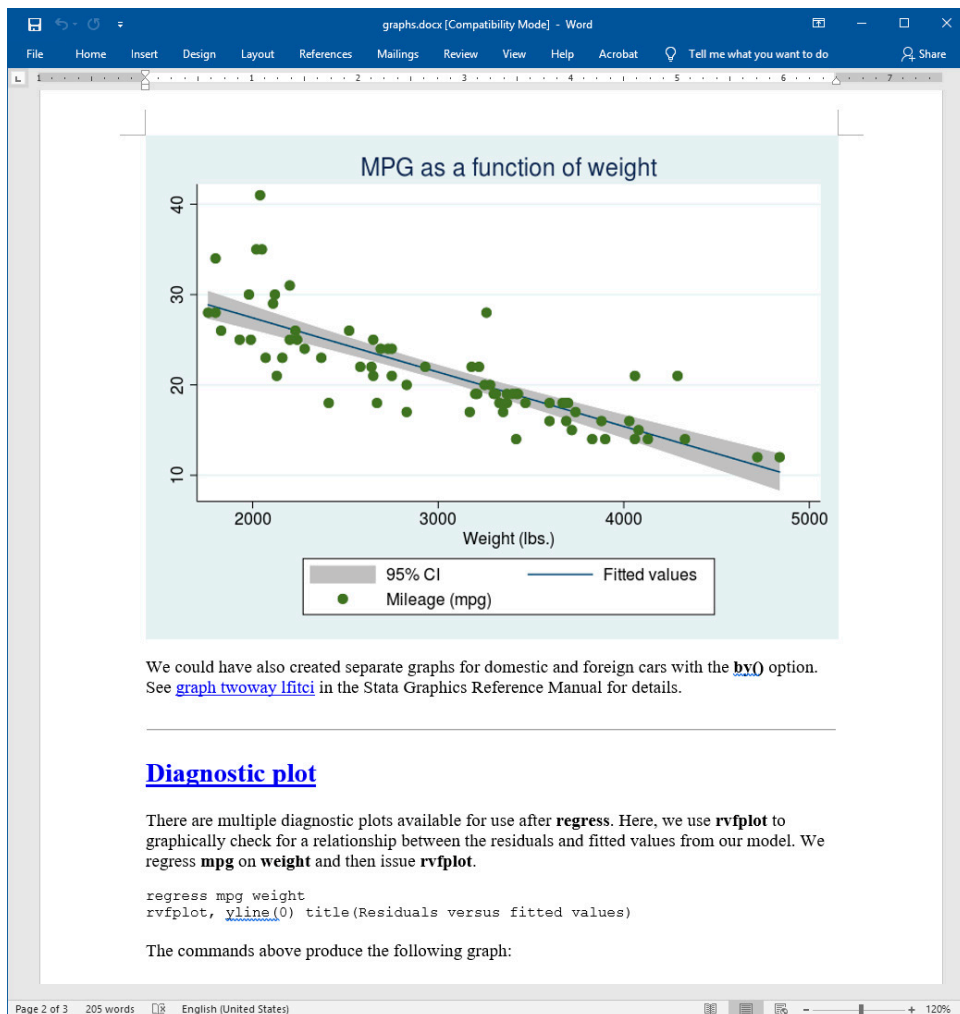
We have an HTML file, `graphs.html`, that includes some Stata graphs. You can copy this file to your current working directory by typing

```
. copy http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/graphs.html .
```

To convert `graphs.html` to a Word document, we type

```
. html2docx graphs.html
```

The file is saved as `graphs.docx`. Here is a portion of this file:



We display the second page of the document to show both text and images found in the Word document. You can see the whole file at <http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/graphs.docx>.



## Also see

[RPT] [docx2pdf](#) — Convert a Word (.docx) document to a PDF file

[RPT] [dyndoc](#) — Convert dynamic Markdown document to HTML or Word (.docx) document

[RPT] [markdown](#) — Convert Markdown document to HTML file or Word (.docx) document

[RPT] [putdocx intro](#) — Introduction to generating Office Open XML (.docx) files

[Description](#)  
[Remarks and examples](#)

[Quick start](#)  
[Reference](#)

[Syntax](#)  
[Also see](#)

[Options](#)

Description

markdown converts a Markdown document to an HTML file or a Word document.

Quick start

Convert Markdown document `myfile.txt` to an HTML file saved as `myfile.html`  
`markdown myfile.txt, saving(myfile.html)`

As above, and overwrite the existing `myfile.html`  
`markdown myfile.txt, saving(myfile.html) replace`

Convert Markdown document `myfile.txt` to a Word document saved as `myfile.docx`  
`markdown myfile.txt, saving(myfile.docx) docx`

Syntax

`markdown srcfile, saving(targetfile) [options]`

*srcfile* is the Markdown document to be converted.  
You may enclose *srcfile* and *targetfile* in double quotes and must do so if they contain spaces or special characters.

<i>options</i>	Description
* <u>saving</u> ( <i>targetfile</i> ) <u>replace</u>	HTML file or Word (.docx) document to be saved replace the target HTML file or Word (.docx) document if it already exists
<code>hardwrap</code>	replace hard wraps (actual line breaks) with the <code>&lt;br&gt;</code> tag in an HTML file or with line breaks in a Word (.docx) document
<code>nomsg</code>	suppress message with a link to <i>targetfile</i>
<code>embedimage</code>	embed image files as Base64 binary data in the target HTML file
<code>basedir</code> ( <i>string</i> )	specify the base directory for relative links in <i>srcfile</i>
<code>docx</code>	output a Word .docx document instead of an HTML file

\*`saving`(*targetfile*) is required.

## Options

`saving(targetfile)` specifies the target file to be saved. If the *targetfile* has the .docx extension, the docx option is assumed even if it is not specified. `saving()` is required.

`replace` specifies that the target file be replaced if it already exists.

`hardwrap` specifies that hard wraps (actual line breaks) in the Markdown document be replaced with the `<br>` tag in the HTML file or with a line break in the Word (.docx) file if the docx option is specified.

`nomsg` suppresses the message that contains a link to the target file.

`embedimage` allows image files to be embedded as data URI (Base64-encoded binary data) in the HTML file. The supported image file types are portable network graphics (.png), JPEG (.jpg), tagged image file format (.tif), and graphics interchange format (.gif). This option cannot be used to embed SVG and PDF image file types.

The image must be specified in a Markdown link; you cannot embed images specified by URLs. This option is ignored if docx is specified.

`basedir(string)` specifies the base directory for the relative links in the *srcfile*. This option only applies when specifying either the docx option or the embedimage option; otherwise, this option is ignored.

`docx` specifies that the target file be saved in Microsoft Word (.docx) format. If the target file has the .docx extension, the docx option is implied. The conversion process consists of first producing an HTML file and then using `html2docx` to produce the final Word document.

## Remarks and examples

`markdown` converts a Markdown document to an HTML file or a Word (.docx) document. A Markdown document is written using an easy-to-read, plain-text, lightweight markup language. For a detailed discussion and the syntax of Markdown, see the [Markdown Wikipedia page](#).

Stata uses Flexmark's Pegdown emulation as its default Markdown document processing engine. For information on Pegdown's flavor of Markdown, see the [Pegdown GitHub page](#).

See [\[RPT\] dyndoc](#) and [\[RPT\] dyntext](#) for a full description of Stata's dynamic document-generation commands. `markdown` is used by `dyndoc` but may also be used directly by programmers.

If you are not familiar with Markdown, we recommend that you first review [example 1](#) below for a brief introduction to this markup language. If you have used Markdown before, see [example 2](#) for details on embedding Stata graphs in your HTML file.

### ► Example 1: Create a basic HTML file with text

Suppose that we want to create a webpage with tips on working with Stata. We have created `markdown1.txt`, shown below, using Markdown-formatted text. We include comments to describe the formatting.



begin markdown1.txt

```

Tips on working in Stata
=====
<!-- To create a heading, we underline text with equal signs. -->
<!-- Text enclosed in these arrows will be ignored. -->
This webpage will provide useful tips on working with Stata.
---

<!-- The three dashes above create a horizontal line. -->
## Working with strings

<!-- We create a sub-heading with two pound signs. -->
We begin by demonstrating when to use destring and encode.

<!-- We use two asterisks around each word we want to format as bold. -->
You should only use destring if a variable actually contains numeric values.
For example, in the following dataset income is stored as a string:
'''

webuse deststring1, clear
destring income, replace
'''

<!-- We use three back-ticks for blocks of code. -->

```

end markdown1.txt

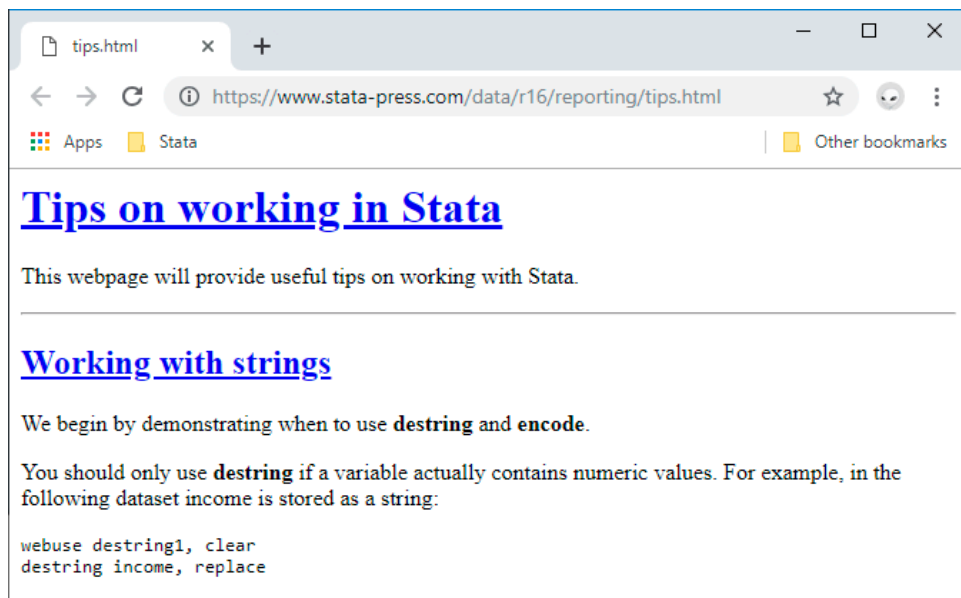
You can copy this file into your working directory by typing

```
. copy http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/markdown1.txt .
```

To convert this text file to an HTML file, we type the following command:

```
. markdown markdown1.txt, saving(tips.html)
```

This creates `tips.html`, which looks like the following:



`tips.html` is also available at <http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/>.

## ► Example 2: Create an HTML file with Stata graphs

The do-file below creates a couple of graphs using Stata.

---

```
begin markdown.do

sysuse auto, clear
twoway lfitci mpg weight || scatter mpg weight, title(MPG as a function of weight)
graph export mpg1.png
regress mpg weight
rvfplot, yline(0) title(Residuals versus fitted values)
graph export diagplot.png, replace
```

---

Suppose we wish to create a webpage (an HTML file) with the instructions on how to produce these graphs. First, we write `markdown2.txt` containing Markdown-formatted text and the Stata code to create the graphs above.

---

```
begin markdown2.txt

Creating graphs in Stata
=====

Below we review some diagnostic plots available in Stata, and we demonstrate
how to overlay plots. We use 'auto.dta', which contains pricing and mileage
data for 1978 automobiles.

---
<!-- In the previous example, we used three back-ticks for a block of code.
Here we use a single back-tick for inline code. -->
## Plotting predictions

We are interested in modeling the mean of **mpg**, miles per gallon, as a function of
**weight**, car weight in pounds. We can use **twoway lfitci** to graph the
predicted miles per gallon from a linear regression, as well as the confidence interval:
'''
sysuse auto, clear
twoway lfitci mpg weight
'''

To see how these predictions compare to our data, we can overlay a scatterplot
of the actual data
'''

twoway lfitci mpg weight || scatter mpg weight, title(MPG as a function of weight)
'''

which produces the following graph:
![[Graph of mpg](mpg1.png)]
<!-- We previously used **graph export** to save the graph as a .png
file, which we now embed in the document. -->
We could have also created separate graphs for domestic and foreign
cars with the **by()** option. See
[graph twoway lfitci](https://www.stata.com/manuals/g-2graphtwowaylfitci.pdf)
in the Stata Graphics Reference Manual for details.

---
## Diagnostic plot

There are multiple diagnostic plots available for use after **regress**. Here,
we use **rvfplot** to graphically check for a relationship between the
residuals and fitted values from our model. We regress **mpg** on
**weight** and then issue **rvfplot**.
'''

regress mpg weight
rvfplot, yline(0) title(Residuals versus fitted values)
'''

The commands above produce the following graph:
![[Diagnostic plot](diagplot.png)]

---

end markdown2.txt
```

---

We can copy both of these files to our current working directory by typing

```
. copy http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/markdown.do .  
. copy http://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/markdown2.txt .
```

We now type the following to execute the commands in `markdown.do` that create the graphs and export them to PNG files. We then convert `markdown2.txt` to an HTML file by using the `markdown` command.

```
. do markdown.do  
. markdown markdown2.txt, saving(graphs.html)
```

This creates `graphs.html`, which looks like the following:

graphs.html

https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/graphs.html

AppsStataOther bookmarks

## Creating graphs in Stata

Below we review some diagnostic plots available in Stata, and we demonstrate how to overlay plots. We use `auto.dta`, which contains pricing and mileage data for 1978 automobiles.

### Plotting predictions

We are interested in modeling the mean of `mpg`, miles per gallon, as a function of `weight`, car weight in pounds. We can use `twoway lfitci` to graph the predicted miles per gallon from a linear regression, as well as the confidence interval:

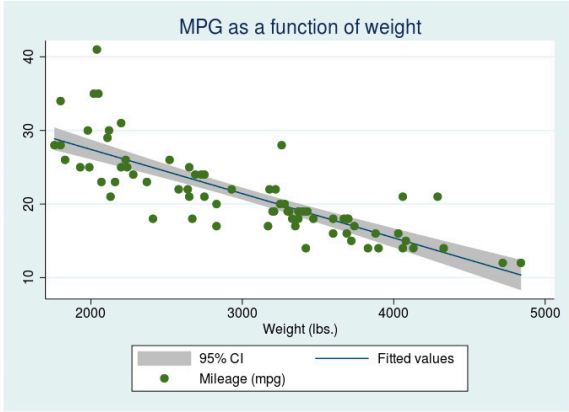
```
sysuse auto, clear
twoway lfitci mpg weight
```

To see how these predictions compare to our data, we can overlay a scatterplot of the actual data

```
twoway lfitci mpg weight || scatter mpg weight, title(MPG as a function of weight)
```

which produces the following graph:

MPG as a function of weight



We could have also created separate graphs for domestic and foreign cars with the `by()` option. See [graph twoway lfitci](#) in the Stata Graphics Reference Manual for details.

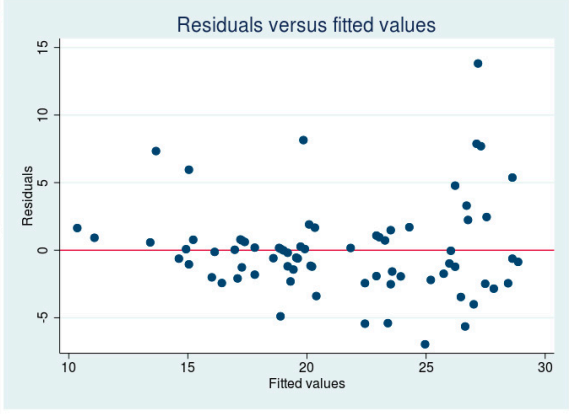
### Diagnostic plot

There are multiple diagnostic plots available for use after `regress`. Here, we use `rvfplot` to graphically check for a relationship between the residuals and fitted values from our model. We regress `mpg` on `weight` and then issue `rvfplot`.

```
regress mpg weight
rvfplot, yline(0) title(Residuals versus fitted values)
```

The commands above produce the following graph:

Residuals versus fitted values



You can view the HTML file at <https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/reporting/graphs.html>.

In this example, we ran the Stata commands and created the HTML file in two separate steps. However, we could do both in a single step with `dyndoc`, which processes Stata code to embed Stata output and graphs in the destination HTML file, and calls `markdown` to process the Markdown-formatted text (like we did above). See [RPT] [dyndoc](#) for information on how to create an HTML or Word (.docx) file with Stata output from a Markdown text file.

&lt;

## Reference

Jann, B. 2017. [Creating HTML or Markdown documents from within Stata using webdoc](#). *Stata Journal* 17: 3–38.

## Also see

[RPT] [Dynamic tags](#) — Dynamic tags for text files

[RPT] [dyndoc](#) — Convert dynamic Markdown document to HTML or Word (.docx) document

[RPT] [dyntext](#) — Process Stata dynamic tags in text file

## Description

The `putdocx` suite of commands creates Office Open XML (.docx) documents that include text, formatted images, and tables of Stata estimation results and summary statistics. The following commands are used to create, format, add content to, and save .docx files that are compatible with Microsoft Word 2007 and later:

### Create, save, and append .docx files (see [RPT] [putdocx begin](#))

<code>putdocx begin</code>	Creates a .docx file for export
<code>putdocx describe</code>	Describes contents of the active .docx file
<code>putdocx save</code>	Saves and closes the .docx file
<code>putdocx clear</code>	Closes the .docx file without saving the changes
<code>putdocx append</code>	Appends the contents of multiple .docx files

### Insert page breaks in a .docx file (see [RPT] [putdocx pagebreak](#))

<code>putdocx pagebreak</code>	Adds a page break to the document
<code>putdocx sectionbreak</code>	Adds a new section to the document

### Add paragraphs with text and images (see [RPT] [putdocx paragraph](#))

<code>putdocx paragraph</code>	Adds a new paragraph to the active document
<code>putdocx text</code>	Adds text to the active paragraph
<code>putdocx textblock</code>	Adds a block of text to the active paragraph or to a new paragraph
<code>putdocx textfile</code>	Adds a block of preformatted text to a new paragraph with a predefined style
<code>putdocx image</code>	Appends an image to the active paragraph
<code>putdocx pagenumber</code>	Adds page numbers to a paragraph in a header or footer

### Add tables to a .docx file (see [RPT] [putdocx table](#))

<code>putdocx table</code>	Creates a new table in the .docx file containing estimation results, summary statistics, or data in memory
----------------------------	--

In this manual entry, we show you how to use the `putdocx` commands by walking you through a first example that creates a simple report as a .docx file. We also provide some suggestions for choosing the best workflow for creating your own .docx files.

## Remarks and examples

Remarks are presented under the following headings:

- Introduction*
- A first example*
  - Create a document*
  - Add a paragraph with text*
  - Add an image to a paragraph*
  - Add a table of estimation results*
- Automating a report*
- Workflow options for report building*
  - Create a complete document in Stata*
  - Create a document from Stata and Word*
  - Append files in Stata*
  - Append files in Word*

## Introduction

putdocx is a suite of commands used to write paragraphs, images, and tables to an Office Open XML (.docx) file. This allows you to create Word documents that include Stata results and graphs. putdocx generates files compatible with Microsoft Word 2007 and later.

## A first example

To get started with the putdocx commands, it is best to see them in action. Here, we demonstrate how to create a .docx file, include text, add a graph, and incorporate an estimation table all from within Stata.

This example shows the basic tools you need to create your own document. However, this is only a starting point. You may want to create more extensive and more customized documents, and putdocx allows you to do that. We save the details of customizing text, tables, and images for the individual entries of the commands listed [above](#).

## Create a document

To demonstrate, we create a report on low birthweight using data from the study described in [Hosmer, Lemeshow, and Sturdivant \(2013, 24\)](#).

```
. use https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/lbw
(Hosmer & Lemeshow data)
```

Before we can add any content to the report, we first need to create an active .docx document in memory. We do this with the putdocx begin command.

```
. putdocx begin
```

Because we did not include any options with putdocx begin, the document created uses the letter page size and the portrait orientation.

## Add a paragraph with text

Now that the document is created, we can add other objects such as paragraphs, images, and tables to it. We begin by adding a title to our report. To do this, we add a paragraph using the `Title` style. Then we add the text of our title using `putdocx text`.

```
. putdocx paragraph, style>Title
. putdocx text ("Report on low birthweights")
```

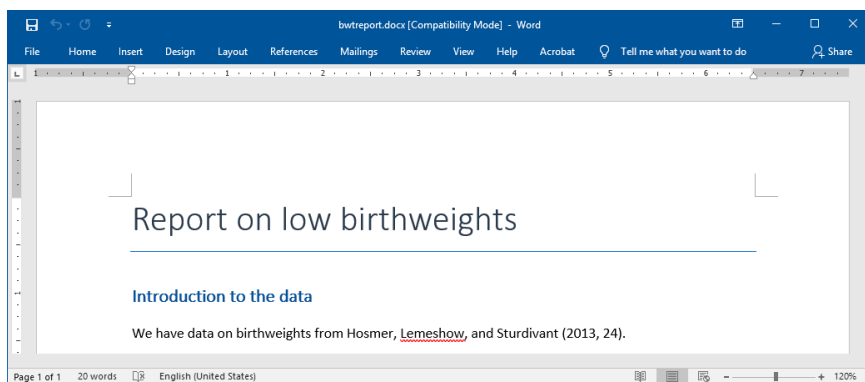
Next we add a heading for the description of our data:

```
. putdocx paragraph, style=Heading1
. putdocx text ("Introduction to the data")
```

Now we are ready to add a standard paragraph where we cite the source of our dataset.

```
. putdocx paragraph
. putdocx text ("We have data on birthweights from Hosmer, Lemeshow, and ")
. putdocx text ("Sturdivant (2013, 24).")
. putdocx save bwtreport
```

We save the document we created in memory under the filename `bwtreport.docx`. When we open the document in Word, we see the following:



When we typed `putdocx save` above, our work was saved and the document was closed, so we now type `putdocx begin` to continue our work. So far, we have only added strings to our paragraphs, but text can also include any valid Stata expression. In the next section of our report, we add text with summary statistics for our data by referring directly to the results stored after `summarize`. We type `return list` and see that the mean is stored in the `r(mean)` scalar and with more decimal places than we wish to include in our sentence. Therefore, we use the `%5.2f` format to request that only two digits be displayed after the decimal.



```
. putdocx begin
. putdocx paragraph, style(Heading1)
. putdocx text ("Summary statistics")
. summarize bwt
```

Variable	Obs	Mean	Std. Dev.	Min	Max
bwt	189	2944.286	729.016	709	4990

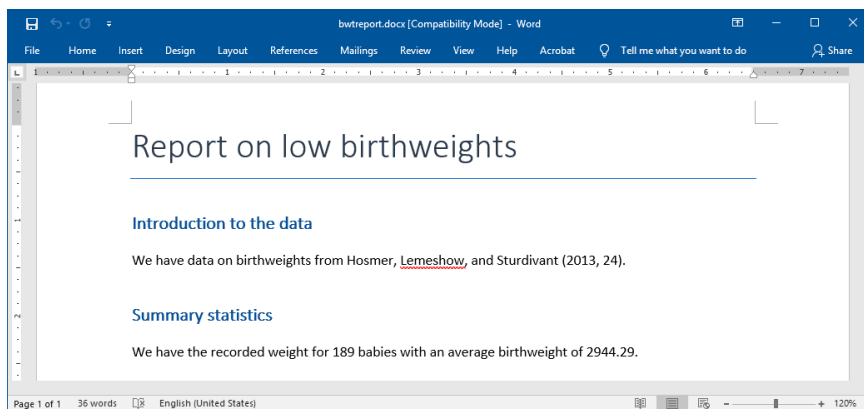
```
. return list
scalars:
      r(N) = 189
    r(sum_w) = 189
    r(mean) = 2944.285714285714
    r(Var) = 531464.3541033434
      r(sd) = 729.0160177275554
    r(min) = 709
    r(max) = 4990
    r(sum) = 556470

. putdocx paragraph
. putdocx text ("We have the recorded weight for 'r(N)' babies ")
. putdocx text ("with an average birthweight of ")
. putdocx text (" 'r(mean)' "), nformat(%5.2f)
. putdocx text (".")
```

To review our document after adding this section, we save it again. However, because we want to add this new content to our existing `bwtreport.docx` file, we specify that we are appending to the file.

```
. putdocx save bwtreport, append
```

Our updated `bwtreport.docx` now looks like this:



## Add an image to a paragraph

Next we graphically compare the average birthweights for babies according to the mother's characteristics. We begin this section of the report by adding another heading.

```
. putdocx begin
. putdocx paragraph, style(Heading1)
. putdocx text ("Birthweight by mother's smoking status")
```

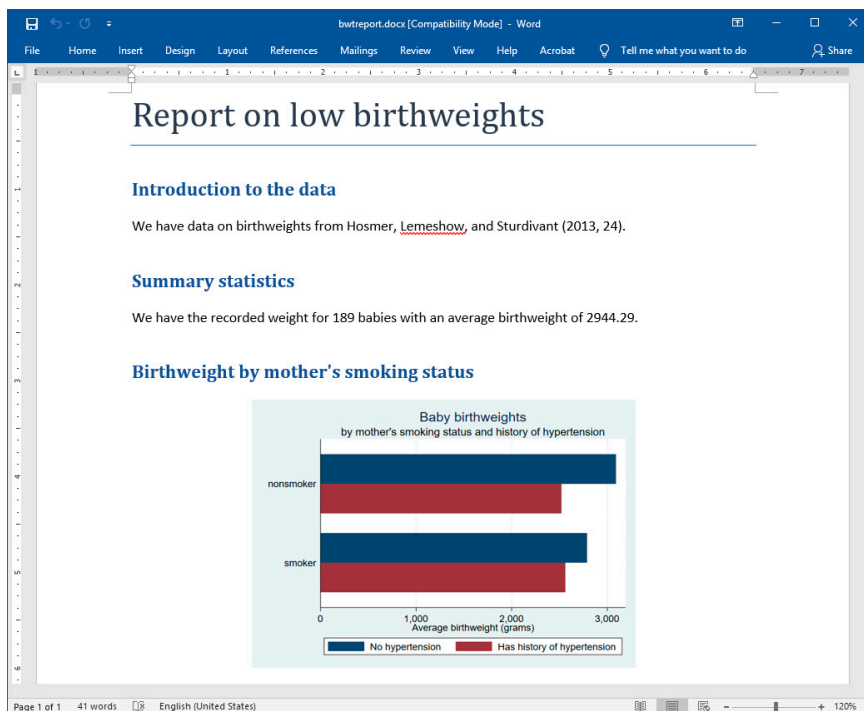
We graph the mean birthweight for babies with mothers who smoke versus those who do not, and separately for mothers with and without a history of hypertension. We use `graph hbar` to create our graph, specifying a title for the overall graph as well as for the  $y$  axis. We must convert the graph to one of the supported image formats: `.jpg`, `.emf`, `.tif`, or `.png`. We save it as a `.png` file with `graph export`.

```
. graph hbar bwt,
> over(ht,relabel(1 "No hypertension" 2 "Has history of hypertension"))
> over(smoke) asyvars ytitle(Average birthweight (grams)) title(Baby birthweights)
> subtitle(by mother's smoking status and history of hypertension)
. graph export bweight.png
(file bweight.png written in PNG format)
```

Now we use `putdocx image` to append it to the active paragraph. To center the image, we specify the alignment of the paragraph. We also resize the image by setting the width at 4 inches and the height at 2.8 inches.

```
. putdocx paragraph, halign(center)
. putdocx image bweight.png, width(4) height(2.8)
. putdocx save bwtreport, append
```

We are ready to save our work again and take a look at our report. Again, we specify the `append` option with `putdocx save` to add the bar graph to the existing content of `bwtreport.docx`. Now the document contains the sections we previously exported plus the bar graph:



## Add a table of estimation results

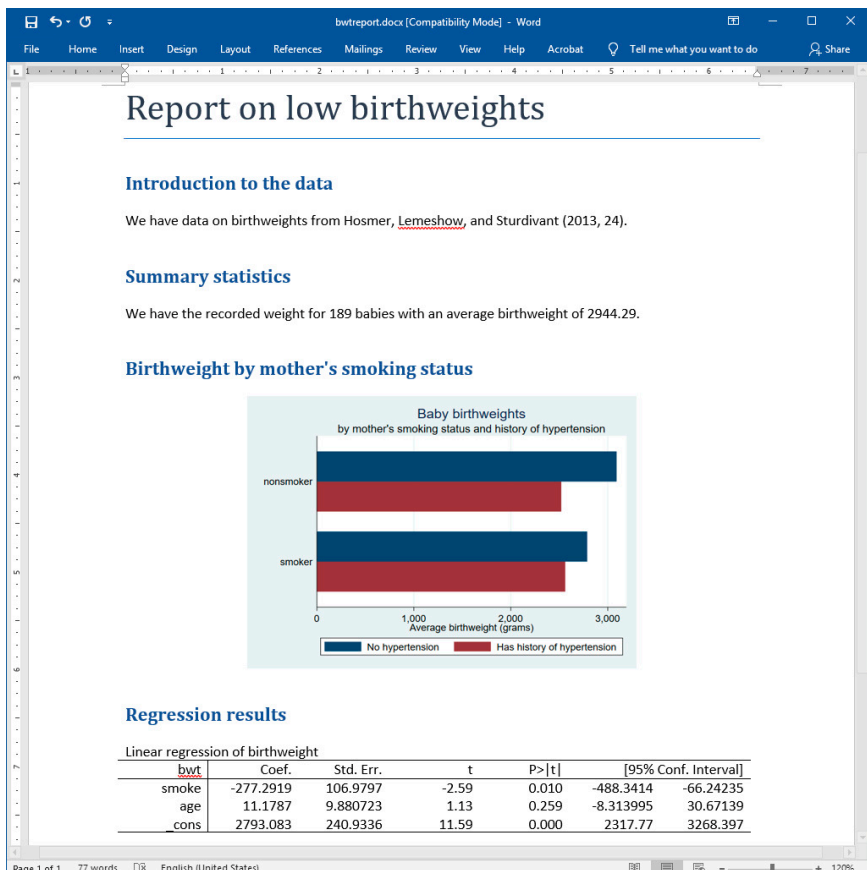
Next we add a table with regression results after modeling birthweight as a function of the mother's age and whether she smokes. We export a table named `bweight`, including all the statistics shown in the regression output below. This is done effortlessly by specifying the `etable` output type with `putdocx table`. We also use the `title()` option to add a title to our table.

```
. putdocx begin
. putdocx paragraph, style(Heading1)
. putdocx text ("Regression results")
. regress bwt smoke age, noheader
```

bwt	Coef.	Std. Err.	t	P> t	[95% Conf. Interval]	
smoke	-277.2919	106.9797	-2.59	0.010	-488.3414	-66.24235
age	11.1787	9.880723	1.13	0.259	-8.313995	30.67139
_cons	2793.083	240.9336	11.59	0.000	2317.77	3268.397

```
. putdocx table bweight = etable, title("Linear regression of birthweight")
. putdocx save bwtreport, append
```

Again, we use `append` to add to the existing content in the file. `bwtreport.docx` now looks like this:



We will treat this as our final report. However, you will likely want to create .docx files with more content and perhaps more customization. See [\[RPT\] putdocx begin](#) for information on formatting the document as a whole, including specifying page size, page layout, font, and headers and footers. See [\[RPT\] putdocx paragraph](#) for information on adding entire blocks of text to a document; modifying the style, font, alignment, and other formatting of a paragraph; customizing the size and location of an image; and adding content to a header or footer. See [\[RPT\] putdocx table](#) for information on creating tables from stored results, matrices, data, and even images and for information on customizing these tables. Finally, see [\[RPT\] putdocx pagebreak](#) for information on adding page breaks and section breaks to your document.

## Automating a report

In the process of creating our report, we saved the document after exporting each section, specifying `append` to add on to our previous work. Saving the document intermittently allowed us to view the document in each stage of progress to ensure that it looked the way we wanted.

Once we have the layout we want, we do not need to view the Word document at each stage. Perhaps we need to create variations of this report rather frequently. Say that we receive monthly data on birthweights from a local hospital and we want to update the report with the new data. We condense the series of commands we previously ran by omitting all but the final `putdocx save` command and all but the initial `putdocx begin` command. We save our series of commands in a do-file. We add `version 16.0` to the top of our do-file to ensure that in future versions of Stata, our commands will continue to run and produce the same results they do today. In addition, because we do not want to save the report with the same name each time we run the do-file, we add the `args filename` command to the top of our file; see [\[P\] syntax](#) for information on this command. Now we can specify the name of the new Word document to be created when we run this file with the `do` command.

---

—begin bwtreport.do—

```
version 16.0
args filename
putdocx begin
putdocx paragraph, style(Title)
putdocx text ("Report on low birthweights")
putdocx paragraph, style(Heading1)
putdocx text ("Introduction to the data")
putdocx paragraph
putdocx text ("We have data on birthweights from Hosmer, Lemeshow, and ")
putdocx text ("Sturdivant (2013, 24).")
putdocx paragraph, style(Heading1)
putdocx text ("Summary statistics")
summarize bwt
putdocx paragraph
putdocx text ("We have the recorded weight for 'r(N)' babies ")
putdocx text ("with an average birthweight of ")
putdocx text (" 'r(mean)' "), nformat(putdocx text ("."))
putdocx paragraph, style(Heading1)
putdocx text ("Birthweight by mother's smoking status")
graph hbar bwt, over(ht, relabel(1 "No hypertension" 2 "Has history of hypertension")) ///
over(smoke) asyvars ytitle(Average birthweight (grams)) title(Baby birthweights) ///
subtitle(by mother's smoking status and history of hypertension)
graph export bweight.png
putdocx paragraph, halign(center)
putdocx image bweight.png, width(4) height(2.8)
putdocx paragraph, style(Heading1)
putdocx text ("Regression results")
```

```
regress bwt smoke age, noheader
putdocx table bweight = etable, title("Linear regression of birthweight")
putdocx save "'filename'", replace
```

---

— end bwtreport.do —

After saving our do-file with the name `bwtreport.do`, we can now type

```
. use lbw_june, clear
. do bwtreport lbwreport_june
```

to create a new report in the same format as the previous one. This report will be run on `lbw_june.dta` (whereas we used `lbw.dta` earlier), and it will be saved under the filename `lbwreport_june.docx`.

## Workflow options for report building

The `putdocx` suite is both capable and flexible because it has an abundance of formatting options to create and format your document completely from within Stata. However, by exporting content to a `.docx` file, it also allows you to interact Stata's capabilities with Word's additional formatting features. Depending on the contents of your document, you may find that one of the following methods of interacting features in Stata and Word is most suitable to creating your document:

1. Create a Word document completely from within Stata.
2. Use Stata to append documents created in both Stata and Word to complete a report.
3. Within a Word document, insert files created with Stata to complete a report.

We discuss the advantages of each approach below.

### Create a complete document in Stata

In [A first example](#) and [Automating a report](#), we demonstrated how to create a Word document directly from Stata. We showed how to automate the process of creating a report once you have decided on specific formatting. Automation of reports and easy reproducibility are advantages of creating your document completely from within Stata. In addition, you can incorporate many of Stata's other features in the same do-file that creates the `.docx` file. For instance, you might include `assert` commands in your do-file to verify expectations you have of your data before generating your report.

One disadvantage of this approach is that it is not as conducive to reports with large amounts of text. You may prefer to type text in Word to take advantage of spell checking and other features. Also, if you create documents using Word's themes, tables of contents, bibliographies, and the like, you will need to access those from directly within Word. If either of these apply to the document you wish to create, consider method 2 or 3.

### Create a document from Stata and Word

Methods 2 and 3 correspond to building your document in fragments, which may be preferable for three reasons. One is that you can write lengthy segments that are not dependent on Stata results or graphs directly in Word. While you can add blocks of text with `putdocx`, it may be done more easily in Word. You can then combine the file created in Word with another file created by using `putdocx`. Another reason is that, if you are writing a lengthy report, you can focus on one section at a time. Perhaps you have not quite decided how best to display your data graphically or what statistics you want to include in your estimation tables. You can save each section under its own filename as you complete it and then combine all the components. The third reason is that you do not have to re-create any formatting with `putdocx` that you already have in an existing Word document.

Whether you piece your document together in Stata or Word will likely depend on the amount of graphs and tables you will be including, and whether you are still deciding on formatting options or already have a customized template. If your report is centered on graphs and estimation results produced in Stata, you may find it easier to append all your files with `putdocx`—method 2. This method might also be preferred if you already have a template in Word with customized formatting.

## Append files in Stata

Using this approach, the final .docx file is created in multiple steps. One or more .docx files are created in Word directly. Likewise, one or more .docx files are created using `putdocx`. We then use `putdocx append` or `putdocx save, append` to combine all of these files into a final .docx file.

The advantage of appending files in Stata is best explained with a hypothetical example. Suppose you are creating a report that will consist of an introduction, a graphics section, and an estimation section. You have already written a long introduction, added a header and footer, and saved your work under the filename `report.docx`. You create a file in Stata for your work on the graphics section and add the heading “Graphics”. After revising and formatting your graphs, you save your work:

```
. putdocx save graphs
```

Next you create a file for your work on estimation results with the heading “Estimation”. You test whether your table of results is better displayed under a portrait or landscape layout and whether the table should include certain statistics. Once you decide which results to display, you save your work for the estimation section:

```
. putdocx save estimation
```

Now you can complete your report by appending the graphics and estimation sections to your file containing the introduction.

```
. putdocx append report graphs estimation
```

The document `report.docx` will now contain your introduction, followed by the graphs, and finally the estimation results. The header and footer you formatted initially for `report.docx` will be applied throughout the complete document. Also, if you choose to add a table of contents to your report, the graphics and estimation headers will be incorporated into it. Using this method to build your document allowed you to experiment with the formatting of your graphs and tables, while easily applying your customized header and footer.

## Append files in Word

Using this approach, the final document is created using Word. Typically, a single Word file is created that includes the majority of the content as well as the desired formatting. One or more segments of the document that contain Stata results are created using `putdocx`. We use Word’s insert features to incorporate the documents created by `putdocx` into the main Word document.

One advantage of inserting portions of your report into a main Word document is that you can experiment with different layouts. Suppose you are discussing a graph in your document, and you are not sure where it should be placed. Within Word, you can try inserting the graph in different gaps between the text. You can instantly see which structure makes the most sense for your report.

Another advantage is that you can also interact Excel’s capabilities by linking in an Excel worksheet in your Word document. Whether you worked directly in Excel or you worked in Stata and exported some results by using `putexcel`, you can link content from Excel in Word. This way, you can interact Excel’s features, Word’s features, and Stata results all in one document.

This approach to building your document might also be preferable if you only need to include a limited number of graphs or statistics from Stata and you have already created a Word document customized to your preference.

## References

- Chatfield, M. D. 2018. [Graphing each individual's data over time](#). *Stata Journal* 18: 503–516.
- Hosmer, D. W., Jr., S. A. Lemeshow, and R. X. Sturdivant. 2013. *Applied Logistic Regression*. 3rd ed. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.
- Jann, B. 2016. [Creating LaTeX documents from within Stata using texdoc](#). *Stata Journal* 16: 245–263.

## Also see

- [RPT] [putdocx begin](#) — Create an Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [RPT] [putdocx pagebreak](#) — Add breaks to an Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [RPT] [putdocx paragraph](#) — Add text or images to an Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [RPT] [putdocx table](#) — Add tables to an Office Open XML (.docx) file

# Title

putdocx begin — Create an Office Open XML (.docx) file

Description

Quick start

Syntax

Options

Remarks and examples

Also see

## Description

putdocx begin creates an Office Open XML (.docx) file. This is the active document that the remaining putdocx commands modify.

putdocx describe describes the active .docx file.

putdocx save saves and closes the .docx file.

putdocx clear closes the .docx file without saving.

putdocx append appends the contents of one or more .docx files to another .docx file.

## Quick start

Create a document in memory onto which subsequent contents are added

```
putdocx begin
```

Create a document with page numbers in the footer named footer1, using uppercase Roman numerals

```
putdocx begin, pagenum(upper_roman) footer(footer1)
```

Save the document in memory to disk as myfile.docx

```
putdocx save myfile
```

Append the contents of filename2.docx and filename3.docx to the end of the contents in filename1.docx

```
putdocx append filename1 filename2 filename3
```

As above, but save the resulting document in a file named filename4.docx

```
putdocx append filename1 filename2 filename3, saving(filename4)
```



# Syntax

Create document for export

```
putdocx begin [ , begin_options ]
```

Describe active document

```
putdocx describe
```

Save and close document

```
putdocx save filename [ , save_options ]
```

Close without saving

```
putdocx clear
```

Append contents of documents

```
putdocx append filename1 filename2 [filename3 [...] ] [ , append_options ]
```

*begin\_options*

Description

<code>pagesize(<i>psize</i>)</code>	set document page size
<code>landscape</code>	change document orientation to landscape
<code>font(<i>fspec</i>)</code>	set font, font size, and font color for the document
<code>pagenum(<i>pnspec</i>)</code>	set page number format
<code>header(<i>hname</i>)</code>	add a header
<code>footer(<i>fname</i>)</code>	add a footer

*save\_options*

Description

<code>replace</code>	replace <i>filename</i> with the active document
<code>append</code>	append the active document to the end of <i>filename</i>
<code>append(<i>ap_opts</i>)</code>	append active document to <i>filename</i> and change page break, header, and footer settings

Only one of `replace`, `append`, or `append(ap_opts)` may be specified.

*append\_options*

Description

<code>saving(<i>filename</i> [ , <code>replace</code> ])</code>	save the document to <i>filename</i> ; use <code>replace</code> to overwrite existing <i>filename</i>
<code>pagebreak</code>	begin each appended file on a new page
<code>headsrc(first   last   own)</code>	specify the document from which headers and footers are to be used; default is <code>headsrc(first)</code>
<code>pgnumrestart</code>	restart page numbering on the first page of each appended document

## Options

Options are presented under the following headings:

*Options for putdocx begin*  
*Options for putdocx save*  
*Options for putdocx append*

### Options for putdocx begin

`pagesize(psize)` sets the page size of the document. *psize* may be `letter`, `legal`, `A3`, `A4`, or `B4JIS`. The default is `pagesize(letter)`.

`landscape` changes the document orientation from portrait (the default) to landscape.

`font(fontname [ , size [ , color ] ])` sets the font, font size, and font color for the document.

*fontname* may be any valid font installed on the user's computer. If *fontname* includes spaces, then it must be enclosed in double quotes. If *fontname* is not specified, the computer's default font will be used.

*size* is a numeric value that represents font size measured in points. The default is 11.

*color* sets the text color. *color* may be one of the colors listed in [Colors](#) of [\[RPT\] Appendix for putdocx](#); a valid RGB value in the form `### ###`, for example, `171 248 103`; or a valid RRGGBB hex value in the form `#####`, for example, `ABF867`.

The font size and font color may be specified individually without specifying *fontname*. Use `font("", size)` to specify the font size only. Use `font("", "", color)` to specify the font color only.

`pagenum(pnformat [ , start [ , chapStyle [ , chapSep ] ])` specifies the format and starting page for page numbers.

*pnformat* specifies the page number format, such as decimals enclosed in parentheses or uppercase Roman numerals. For a complete list of page number formats, see [Page number formats](#) of [\[RPT\] Appendix for putdocx](#).

*start* specifies the starting page number and must be an integer greater than or equal to 0. The default is 1.

*chapStyle* specifies the style used for chapter headings. The default *chapStyle* is `Heading1`. For a complete list of chapter styles, see [Chapter styles](#) of [\[RPT\] Appendix for putdocx](#).

*chapSep* specifies the symbol used to separate chapter numbers and page numbers. *chapSep* may be `colon`, `hyphen`, `em_dash`, `en_dash`, or `period`. The default is `hyphen`.

This option is not required for including page numbers in your document, unless you want to include chapter numbers as well. To include chapter numbers, specify the style used to indicate chapters (*chapStyle*), and optionally, the symbol used to separate chapter and page numbers.

When specifying *chapStyle* and *chapSep*, chapter numbers will be reported along with the page numbers. To activate these options, you must specify a multilevel list style in Word that includes headings.

`header(hname)` adds the header named *hname* to the document. The content of *hname*, including page numbers, can be defined with either `putdocx paragraph` or `putdocx table`. *hname* must be a valid name according to Stata's naming conventions; see [\[U\] 11.3 Naming conventions](#).

`footer(fname)` adds the footer named *fname* to the document. The content of *fname*, including page numbers, can be defined with either `putdocx paragraph` or `putdocx table`. *fname* must be a valid name according to Stata's naming conventions; see [U] 11.3 Naming conventions.

## Options for `putdocx save`

`replace` specifies to overwrite *filename*, if it exists, with the contents of the document in memory.

`append` specifies to append the contents of the document in memory to the end of *filename*.

`append(ap_opts)` specifies to append the contents of the document in memory to *filename* and indicates whether new content will be added on a new page, which header and footer to use, and whether to restart page numbering for each document. *ap\_opts* are `pagebreak`, `headsrc()`, and `pnumrestart`.

`pagebreak` appends the active document beginning on a new page.

`headsrc(file|active|own)` specifies the file whose header and footer will be used in the document.

`headsrc(file)` is the default; it applies the header and footer from *filename* throughout the document.

`headsrc(active)` applies the header and footer from the active document throughout the document.

`headsrc(own)` specifies that each document, *filename* and the active document, use its own header and footer. If the active document does not have a header or footer, it will inherit the header or footer from *filename*.

`pnumrestart` restarts page numbering in each document; `pagebreak` must be specified with `pnumrestart`.

## Options for `putdocx append`

`saving(filename [, replace])` specifies to append the contents of the existing document *filename*<sub>2</sub> to the end of *filename*<sub>1</sub> and then write the result to the new document *filename*. If *filename* already exists, it can be overwritten by specifying `replace`. By default, *filename*<sub>1</sub> is overwritten with the document created by appending content from *filename*<sub>2</sub>.

If more than two files are specified, the contents are appended in the order in which the files are listed. For example, *filename*<sub>2</sub> is appended to *filename*<sub>1</sub>, *filename*<sub>3</sub> is appended to the result of the first append, and so forth.

`pagebreak` begins each appended file on a new page.

`headsrc(first|last|own)` specifies the document from which headers and footers are to be used.

`headsrc(first)`, the default, specifies that the header and footer from the first document being appended, *filename*<sub>1</sub>, be applied throughout the document.

`headsrc(last)` specifies that the header and footer from the last document be applied throughout the document. `headsrc(last)` may not be specified with `pnumrestart`.

`headsrc(own)` specifies that each file being appended use its own header and footer. If any file does not have a header or footer, it will inherit the header or footer from the previous document.

`pnumrestart` restarts page numbering on the first page of each appended document. The `pagebreak` option must be specified with `pnumrestart`. This option may not be specified with `headsrc(last)`.

## Remarks and examples

Remarks are presented under the following headings:

*Creating and formatting a .docx file*  
*Including headers and footers*  
*Describing the document*  
*Saving or clearing the .docx file*  
*Appending .docx files*

### Creating and formatting a .docx file

Before we can write to a .docx file by using putdocx, we need to create an active .docx document in memory by using the putdocx begin command. We can simply type

```
. putdocx begin
```

to create a document. We could now add content to this document. For information on adding text or images to the document, see [RPT] **putdocx paragraph**. For information on adding tables to the document, see [RPT] **putdocx table**.

Because we did not include any options in the above putdocx begin command, it creates a letter-size document with pages in portrait orientation. It uses our computer's default font type and font color in 11-point size. We can specify other formats for the document as a whole by using the options available with putdocx begin. We can specify the page size, page orientation, and font properties for the document. We can also include page numbers, headers, and footers.

For example, to create a document with letter-size pages in landscape orientation and 11-point Garamond font, we type

```
. putdocx begin, landscape font(Garamond)
```

The page size and orientation set with putdocx begin remain in effect until a [section break](#) is added.

The font properties specified with putdocx begin remain in effect throughout the document, but we can change these properties for each [paragraph](#) (or each [sentence](#) or even each [word](#)) with the options available in [RPT] **putdocx paragraph**. When specified without options, putdocx paragraph and putdocx text will default to the font properties specified in putdocx begin. Any text added with putdocx textblock will also default to the font properties specified in putdocx begin, unless we specify some other format by using dynamic tags within the text block.

Headers and footers remain in effect throughout the document by default, but they can be changed when a new section is added to the document.

### Including headers and footers

To create a document that includes a header, footer, or page numbers requires multiple steps. First, we need to include either the header() or footer() option in our putdocx begin command, and if desired, we can customize the page numbers using the pagenum() option. Then we use either putdocx paragraph or putdocx table to add content, including page numbers, to the header or footer.

For instance, suppose we are creating an academic progress report for a local high school, and we want to include a footer with the page number and school name. We can create our document as follows:

```
. putdocx begin, pagenum(decimal) footer(npage)
```

In this command, we specified the decimal format for the page numbers, and we added a blank footer to our document.

Now, we can define the contents of the footer `npage` by using `putdocx paragraph`.

```
. putdocx paragraph, tofooter(npage)
. putdocx text ("Mountain High Report: ")
. putdocx pagenumber
```

This creates a paragraph with the school name and page number. The `tofooter()` option directed the content of this paragraph to the footer, `npage`, rather than including it in the body of the document.

## Describing the document

To view a document, we must first save the file. However, if we have been adding text, images, and tables to a document, we can describe the contents of the active document without saving it.

```
. putdocx describe
```

This reports the number of paragraphs and tables that have been added to the document.

## Saving or clearing the .docx file

When we have finished adding content to our document, we can save it under a given filename, say, `myfile.docx`.

```
. putdocx save myfile, replace
```

The `replace` option specifies that we wish to overwrite the contents of an existing `myfile.docx`.

If the current document is a continuation of work stored in an existing file—say, `oldfile.docx`—then we can instead append the current document's contents to the existing file by typing

```
. putdocx save oldfile, append
```

This command adds the content of the active document that we have been working on to `oldfile.docx`, beginning directly below its original content. The new combined document is saved as `oldfile.docx`.

Issuing the `putdocx save` command automatically clears the active document from memory and closes it after it is saved.

Sometimes, we may want to clear the active document from memory without saving it. Perhaps we accidentally added a table with the wrong numeric formatting or we forgot to label a graph. We can type

```
. putdocx clear
```

This command clears the document in memory and automatically closes the document without saving.

`putdocx clear` is especially important if we are running a `do-file` with a series of `putdocx` commands repeatedly. Maybe we have `putdocx begin` at the top of our `do-file` and when we try to run it again, we get an error message. We must either save our work or close the document with `putdocx clear` before we can issue `putdocx begin` again.

## Appending .docx files

Sometimes, it is easiest to create a final document by appending multiple .docx files. Perhaps you create parts of a report directly within Word and create other parts using `putdocx`. Perhaps you prefer to work on your document out of order and then compile the parts at the end. In these cases, we can use the `putdocx append` command.

Say we have four files that we are now ready to merge: `part1.docx`, `part2.docx`, `part3.docx`, and `part4.docx`. We can type

```
. putdocx append part1 part3 part2 part4, saving(allparts)
```

`putdocx append` appends files in the order in which they are specified, so the above command will append `part3` to the end of `part1`, `part2` to the end of `part3`, and `part4` to the end of `part2`. We also specified to save the resulting document in a new file called `allparts.docx`.

Oops! `part2` should have come before `part3` in the merged file. We can fix that by typing

```
. putdocx append part1 part2 part3 part4, saving(allparts, replace)
```

By including `replace` in the `saving()` option, we request that the resulting document overwrite the existing contents of `allparts.docx`.

If we do not use the `saving()` option, for example,

```
. putdocx append part1 part2 part3 part4
```

then the merged document is saved in the first-listed file, namely, `part1.docx`.

## Also see

[RPT] [putdocx intro](#) — Introduction to generating Office Open XML (.docx) files

[RPT] [putdocx pagebreak](#) — Add breaks to an Office Open XML (.docx) file

[RPT] [putdocx paragraph](#) — Add text or images to an Office Open XML (.docx) file

[RPT] [putdocx table](#) — Add tables to an Office Open XML (.docx) file

[RPT] [Appendix for putdocx](#) — Appendix for `putdocx` entries

# Title

**putdocx pagebreak** — Add breaks to an Office Open XML (.docx) file

[Description](#)[Remarks and examples](#)[Quick start](#)[Also see](#)[Syntax](#)[Options](#)

## Description

`putdocx pagebreak` adds a page break to the document, placing subsequent content on the next page of the document.

`putdocx sectionbreak` adds a new section to the document and begins the section on the next page. It lets you vary the formatting of the pages within a single document. This command is most useful when you want to mix portrait and landscape layouts or apply different headers and footers across sections of your document.

## Quick start

Add a page break to the document

```
putdocx pagebreak
```

Begin a new section with a landscape layout in the document

```
putdocx sectionbreak, landscape
```

Begin a new section with the header `appendix`, and add the text “Appendix” to this header

```
putdocx sectionbreak, header(appendix)
```

```
putdocx paragraph, toheader(appendix)
```

```
putdocx text ("Appendix")
```

## Syntax

Add page break to document

```
putdocx pagebreak
```

Add section break to document

```
putdocx sectionbreak [ , options ]
```

<i>options</i>	Description
<code>pagesize(<i>psize</i>)</code>	set page size of the section
<code>landscape</code>	use a landscape orientation for the section
<code>pagenum(<i>pnspec</i>)</code>	set page number format
<code>header(<i>hname</i>)</code>	add a header
<code>footer(<i>fname</i>)</code>	add a footer

## Options

`pagesize(psize)` sets the page size of the section. *psize* may be `letter`, `legal`, `A3`, `A4`, or `B4JIS`. The default is `pagesize(letter)`.

`landscape` changes the section orientation from portrait (the default) to landscape.

`pagenum(pnformat [ , start [ , chapStyle [ , chapSep ] ] ] )` specifies the format and starting page for page numbers.

*pnformat* specifies the page number format, such as decimals enclosed in parentheses or uppercase Roman numerals. For a complete list, see [Page number formats](#) of [RPT] [Appendix for putdocx](#).

*start* specifies the starting page number and must be an integer greater than or equal to 0. The default is 1.

*chapStyle* indicates the style used for chapter headings. The default *chapStyle* is `Heading1`. For a complete list of chapter styles, see [Chapter styles](#) of [RPT] [Appendix for putdocx](#).

*chapSep* specifies the symbol used to separate chapter numbers and page numbers. *chapSep* may be `colon`, `hyphen`, `em_dash`, `en_dash`, or `period`. The default is `hyphen`.

This option is not required for including page numbers in your document, unless you want to include chapter numbers as well. To include chapter numbers, specify the style used to indicate chapters (*chapStyle*), and optionally, the symbol used to separate chapter and page numbers.

When specifying *chapStyle* and *chapSep*, chapter numbers will also be reported along with the page numbers. To activate these options, you must specify a multilevel list style in Word that includes headings.

`header(hname)` adds the header *hname* to the section. The content of *hname*, including page numbers, can be defined with either `putdocx paragraph` or `putdocx table`. *hname* must be a valid name according to Stata's naming conventions; see [U] [11.3 Naming conventions](#).

`footer(fname)` adds the footer *fname* to the section. The content of *fname*, including page numbers, can be defined with either `putdocx paragraph` or `putdocx table`. *fname* must be a valid name according to Stata's naming conventions; see [U] [11.3 Naming conventions](#).



## Remarks and examples

The `putdocx pagebreak` and `putdocx sectionbreak` commands are useful for organizing your .docx document. Whether you wish to insert page breaks for each new section in your file or you want to format different segments of your document differently, you can do this with these two commands.

To begin all subsequently added content on the next page in the active document, use the `putdocx pagebreak` command. `putdocx pagebreak` will retain the document formatting in effect, such as page size and headers, when you issue the command.

To begin all subsequently added content on the next page and also change the document formatting, use the `putdocx sectionbreak` command with its options. The page size and orientation specified with `putdocx sectionbreak` will remain in effect until you issue another `putdocx sectionbreak` command. `putdocx sectionbreak` with no options defaults to a letter-size page in portrait orientation. On the other hand, the header (or footer) applied with `putdocx sectionbreak` will continue to be applied after section breaks and page breaks, unless you specify another header (or footer).

### ► Example 1: Modifying page size and orientation

Suppose we created a new document with letter-size pages in a portrait orientation by typing

```
. putdocx begin
```

After we have added some content to this document, we may need to include an extra-wide table. Say that our table has so many columns that we need to not only change the page orientation but also use a larger page. We need to add a section break:

```
. putdocx sectionbreak, pagesize(legal) landscape
```

Issuing the command above adds a new section that begins on the next page. This section will have legal-size pages and a landscape orientation.

We add our table (see [RPT] [putdocx table](#)) and now wish to return to the original letter-size page in portrait orientation. We do this with another section break.

```
. putdocx sectionbreak
```

As mentioned above, `putdocx sectionbreak` with no options defaults to a letter-size page in portrait orientation.



The `putdocx sectionbreak` command is helpful if you have, for example, wide tables or large images, but you do not want those inclusions to dictate the size or orientation of all the pages in your document. It is also helpful if your document is divided into sections, and you want to apply a different header or footer to each section.

### ► Example 2: Modifying header content

Suppose we are creating an annual report for the nearby community college that tracks the changes in the grade point average for each semester. Because this is a lengthy report, we organize it by specifying the semester we are reporting on in the header. We set up our document as follows:

```
putdocx begin, header(fall18)
putdocx paragraph, toheader(fall18)
putdocx text ("Fall 2018 ")
putdocx paragraph, style(Heading1)
```

```
putdocx text ("Changes in GPA")
putdocx sectionbreak, header(empty)
putdocx sectionbreak, header(winter18)
putdocx paragraph, toheader(winter18)
putdocx text ("Winter 2018 ")
putdocx paragraph, style(Heading1)
putdocx text ("Changes in GPA")
```

With the first `putdocx sectionbreak` command above, we added a blank page between the “Fall 2018” section and the “Winter 2018” section. Because we did not want to include any headers in this section, we specified the `header()` option with the header name `empty` for this section but did not define the content of `empty`, essentially adding a blank header.

This is just the frame for our document. We can now use other `putdocx` commands to insert any text, tables with summary statistics, graphics, and additional headings.



## Also see

- [\[RPT\] putdocx intro](#) — Introduction to generating Office Open XML (.docx) files
- [\[RPT\] putdocx begin](#) — Create an Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [\[RPT\] putdocx paragraph](#) — Add text or images to an Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [\[RPT\] putdocx table](#) — Add tables to an Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [\[RPT\] Appendix for putdocx](#) — Appendix for `putdocx` entries

Description  
Remarks and examples

Quick start  
Also see

Syntax

Options

## Description

`putdocx paragraph` adds a new paragraph to the document. The newly created paragraph becomes the active paragraph. All subsequent text or images will be appended to the active paragraph.

`putdocx text` adds text to the paragraph created by `putdocx paragraph`. The text may be a plain text string or any valid Stata expression (see [\[U\] 13 Functions and expressions](#)).

`putdocx textblock begin` adds a new paragraph to which a block of text can be added.

`putdocx textblock append` appends a block of text to the active paragraph.

`putdocx textblock end` ends a block of text initiated by `putdocx textblock begin` or `putdocx textblock append`.

`putdocx textfile` adds a block of preformatted text to a new paragraph with a predefined style.

`putdocx pagenumber` adds page numbers to a paragraph that is to be added to the header or footer.

`putdocx image` embeds a portable network graphics (.png), JPEG (.jpg), enhanced metafile (.emf), or tagged image file format (.tif) file in the active paragraph. Adding an image is not supported on console Stata for Mac.

## Quick start

Add a paragraph to the document with centered horizontal alignment

```
putdocx paragraph, halign(center)
```

Append the text “This is paragraph text.” to the active paragraph and format the text as bold

```
putdocx text ("This is paragraph text."), bold
```

Add a PNG image saved as `myimg` to the active paragraph

```
putdocx image myimg.png
```

Add content to the header `myheading` with the text “My Header ” followed by the page number

```
putdocx paragraph, toheader(myheading)
```

```
putdocx text ("My Header ")
```

```
putdocx pagenumber
```

Add a new paragraph containing the text between the two `putdocx textblock` commands

```
putdocx textblock begin
```

```
This paragraph is written as a block of text.
```

```
putdocx textblock end
```

Add file `intro.txt` to the document as a new paragraph

```
putdocx textfile intro.txt
```

As above, but append `intro.txt` to the active paragraph

```
putdocx textfile intro.txt, append
```

# Syntax

Add paragraph to document

```
putdocx paragraph [ , paragraph_options ]
```

Add text to paragraph

```
putdocx text (exp) [ , text_options ]
```

Add a paragraph with a block of text

```
putdocx textblock begin
```

Append a block of text to the active paragraph

```
putdocx textblock append
```

End the block of text initiated with putdocx textblock begin or putdocx textblock append

```
putdocx textblock end
```

Add page number to paragraph (to be added to header or footer)

```
putdocx pagenumber [ , text_options totalpages ]
```

Add a textfile as a block of preformatted text

```
putdocx textfile textfile [ , append stopat(string [ , stopatopt ] ) ]
```

Add image to paragraph

```
putdocx image filename [ , image_options ]
```

*filename* is the full path to the image file or the relative path from the current working directory.

<i>paragraph_options</i>	Description
<code>style(<i>pstyle</i>)</code>	set paragraph text with specific style
<code>font(<i>fspec</i>)</code>	set font, font size, and font color
<code>halign(<i>hvalue</i>)</code>	set paragraph alignment
<code>valign(<i>vvalue</i>)</code>	set vertical alignment of characters on each line
<code>indent(<i>indenttype</i>, # [<i>unit</i> ] )</code>	set paragraph indentation
<code>spacing(<i>position</i>, # [<i>unit</i> ] )</code>	set spacing between lines of text
<code>shading(<i>sspec</i>)</code>	set background color, foreground color, and fill pattern
<code>toheader(<i>hname</i>)</code>	add paragraph content to the header <i>hname</i>
<code>tofooter(<i>fname</i>)</code>	add paragraph content to the footer <i>fname</i>

<i>text_options</i>	Description
* <b>nformat</b> (% <i>fmt</i> )	specify numeric format for text
<b>font</b> ( <i>fspec</i> )	set font, font size, and font color
<b>bold</b>	format text as bold
<b>italic</b>	format text as italic
<b>script</b> (sub   super)	set subscript or superscript formatting of text
<b>strikeout</b>	strike out text
<b>underline</b> [ ( <i>upattern</i> ) ]	underline text using specified pattern
<b>shading</b> ( <i>sspec</i> )	set background color, foreground color, and fill pattern
<b>linebreak</b> [ (#) ]	add line breaks after text
<b>allcaps</b>	format text as all caps
* <b>smallcaps</b>	format text as small caps

\*Cannot be specified with putdocx pagenumber.

<i>image_options</i>	Description
<b>width</b> (# [ <i>unit</i> ] )	set image width
<b>height</b> (# [ <i>unit</i> ] )	set image height
<b>linebreak</b> [ (#) ]	add line breaks after image
<b>link</b>	insert link to image file

*fspec* is

*fontname* [ , *size* [ , *color* ] ]

*fontname* may be any valid font installed on the user’s computer. If *fontname* includes spaces, then it must be enclosed in double quotes.

*size* is a numeric value that represents font size measured in points. The default is 11.

*color* sets the text color.

*sspec* is

*bcolor* [ , *fgcolor* [ , *fpattern* ] ]

*bcolor* specifies the background color.

*fgcolor* specifies the foreground color. The default foreground color is black.

*fpattern* specifies the fill pattern. The most common fill patterns are solid for a solid color (determined by *fgcolor*), pct25 for 25% gray scale, pct50 for 50% gray scale, and pct75 for 75% gray scale. A complete list of fill patterns is shown in [Shading patterns](#) of [RPT] [Appendix for putdocx](#).

*color*, *bcolor*, and *fgcolor* may be one of the colors listed in [Colors](#) of [RPT] [Appendix for putdocx](#); a valid RGB value in the form ### ##, for example, 171 248 103; or a valid RRGGBB hex value in the form #####, for example, ABF867.

*upattern* may be any of the patterns listed in *Underline patterns* of [RPT] **Appendix for putdocx**. The most common underline patterns are double, dash, and none.

*unit* may be in (inch), pt (point), cm (centimeter), or twip (twentieth of a point). An inch is equivalent to 72 points, 2.54 centimeters, or 1440 twips. The default is in.

## Options

Options are presented under the following headings:

*Options for putdocx paragraph*  
*Options for putdocx text*  
*Options for putdocx pagenumber*  
*Options for putdocx textfile*  
*Options for putdocx image*

### Options for putdocx paragraph

**style**(*pstyle*) specifies that the text in the paragraph be formatted with style *pstyle*. Common values for *pstyle* are Title, Subtitle, and Heading1. See the complete list of paragraph styles in *Paragraph styles* of [RPT] **Appendix for putdocx**.

**font**(*fontname* [, *size* [, *color*]]) sets the font, font size, and font color for the text within the paragraph. The font size and font color may be specified individually without specifying *fontname*. Use font("", *size*) to specify font size only. Use font("", "", *color*) to specify font color only. For both cases, the default font will be used.

Specifying font() with putdocx paragraph overrides font properties specified with putdocx begin.

**halign**(*hvalue*) sets the horizontal alignment of the text within the paragraph. *hvalue* may be left, right, center, both, or distribute. distribute and both justify text between the left and right margins equally, but distribute also changes the spacing between words and characters. The default is halign(left).

**valign**(*vvalue*) sets the vertical alignment of the characters on each line when the paragraph contains characters of varying size. *vvalue* may be auto, baseline, bottom, center, or top. The default is valign(baseline).

**indent**(*indenttype*, #[*unit*]) specifies that the paragraph be indented by # *units*. *indenttype* may be left, right, hanging, or para. left and right indent # *units* from the left or the right, respectively. hanging uses hanging indentation and indents lines after the first line by # inches unless another *unit* is specified. para uses standard paragraph indentation and indents the first line by # inches unless another *unit* is specified. This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to accommodate different indentation settings. If both indent(hanging) and indent(para) are specified, only indent(hanging) is used.

**spacing**(*position*, #[*unit*]) sets the spacing between lines of text. *position* may be before, after, or line. before specifies the space before the first line of the current paragraph, after specifies the space after the last line of the current paragraph, and line specifies the space between lines within the current paragraph. This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to accommodate different spacing settings.

**shading**(*bgcolor* [, *fgcolor* [, *fpattern*]]) sets the background color, foreground color, and fill pattern for the paragraph.

`toheader(hname)` specifies that the paragraph be added to the header *hname*. The paragraph will not be added to the body of the document.

`tofooter(fname)` specifies that the paragraph be added to the footer *fname*. The paragraph will not be added to the body of the document.

## Options for putdocx text

`nformat(%fmt)` specifies the numeric format of the text when the content of the new text appended to the paragraph is a numeric value. This setting has no effect when the content is a string.

`font(fontname [ , size [ , color ] ])` sets the font, font size, and font color for the new text within the active paragraph. The font size and font color may be specified individually without specifying *fontname*. Use `font("", size)` to specify the font size only. Use `font("", "", color)` to specify the font color only. For both cases, the default font will be used.

Specifying `font()` with `putdocx text` overrides all other font settings, including those specified with `putdocx begin` and `putdocx paragraph`.

`bold` specifies that the new text in the active paragraph be formatted as bold.

`italic` specifies that the new text in the active paragraph be formatted as italic.

`script(sub|super)` changes the script style of the new text. `script(sub)` makes the text a subscript. `script(super)` makes the text a superscript.

`strikeout` specifies that the new text in the active paragraph have a strikeout mark.

`underline[(upattern)]` specifies that the new text in the active paragraph be underlined and optionally specifies the format of the line. By default, a single underline is used.

`shading(bgcolor [ , fgcolor [ , fpattern ] ])` sets the background color, foreground color, and fill pattern for the active paragraph. Specifying `shading()` with `putdocx text` overrides shading specifications from `putdocx paragraph`.

`linebreak[#]` specifies that one or *#* line breaks be added after the new text.

`allcaps` specifies that all letters of the new text in the active paragraph be capitalized.

`smallcaps` specifies that all letters of the new text in the active paragraph be capitalized, with larger capitals for uppercase letters and smaller capitals for lowercase letters.

## Options for putdocx pagenumber

`font(fontname [ , size [ , color ] ])` sets the font, font size, and font color for the page numbers. The font size and font color may be specified individually without specifying *fontname*. Use `font("", size)` to specify the font size only. Use `font("", "", color)` to specify the font color only. For both cases, the default font will be used.

Specifying `font()` with `putdocx pagenumber` overrides all other font settings, including those specified with `putdocx begin` and `putdocx paragraph`.

`bold` specifies that the page numbers be formatted as bold.

`italic` specifies that the page numbers be formatted as italic.

`script(sub|super)` changes the script style of the page numbers. `script(sub)` makes the page numbers subscripts. `script(super)` makes the page numbers superscripts.

`strikeout` specifies that the page numbers have a strikeout mark.

`underline`[*(upattern)*] specifies that the page numbers be underlined and optionally specifies the format of the line. By default, a single underline is used.

`shading`(*bgcolor* [, *fgcolor* [, *fpattern*]]) sets the background color, foreground color, and fill pattern for the page numbers. Specifying `shading()` with `putdocx pagenumber` overrides shading specifications from `putdocx paragraph`.

`linebreak`[*(#)*] specifies that one or *#* line breaks be added after the page numbers.

`allcaps` specifies that the page numbers be capitalized; this only applies with the page number formats `lower_letter`, `lower_roman`, `cardinal_text`, and `ordinal_text`.

`totalpages` specifies that the total number of pages be displayed, instead of the current number of the page.

## Options for putdocx textfile

`append` specifies that the text file be appended to the current paragraph, rather than being added as a new paragraph.

`stopat`(*string* [, *stopatopt*]) specifies that only a portion of the text file be included, using the specified string as the end point.

*stopatopt* must be one of `begin`, `end`, or `contain`. The default is `begin`, which matches the string at the beginning of the line. `contain` matches the string inside the line. `end` matches the string at the end of the line. If the line matches the string, the rest of the text file, including the line, will not be included in the document.

## Options for putdocx image

`width`(*#*[*unit*]) sets the width of the image. If the width is larger than the body width of the document, then the body width is used. If `width()` is not specified, then the default size is used; the default is determined by the image information and the body width of the document.

`height`(*#*[*unit*]) sets the height of the image. If `height()` is not specified, then the height of the image is determined by the width and the aspect ratio of the image.

`linebreak`[*(#)*] specifies that one or *#* line breaks be added after the new image.

`link` specifies that a link to the image *filename* be inserted into the document. If the image is linked, then the referenced file must be present so that the document can display the image.

## Remarks and examples

Text, headers, footers, page numbers, and images are added to a .docx file via paragraphs. You first create a paragraph and then append text and other content to it. A paragraph can be formatted as a whole, and portions of the text within a paragraph can also be formatted individually.

To a paragraph, you can add valid Stata expressions, including strings, algebraic expressions, and direct references to stored results using `putdocx text`. For lengthier additions, you can add blocks of text using `putdocx textblock`. You can also insert preformatted text files in your .docx file with `putdocx textfile`. With `putdocx image`, you can add images such as Stata graphs to a paragraph.

`putdocx paragraph` does not only add standard paragraphs to a document; with the variety of formatting options available to customize paragraphs, you can create a document complete with a title, subtitle, headings, and headers and footers.



Remarks are presented under the following headings:

*Adding a paragraph*  
*Formatting text*  
*Working with blocks of text*  
*Adding an image to the document*  
*Inserting text files in the document*

## Adding a paragraph

With each `putdocx paragraph` command we execute, we have the opportunity to format all the text within the paragraph. For instance, we can specify font properties such as size and color along with alignment, indentation, and line spacing.

Specifying `putdocx paragraph` without any options will create an active paragraph in the body of the document. To instead add the paragraph content to a header or footer, use the `toheader()` or `tofooter()` option.

### ► Example 1: Add a title to the document

Suppose we want to create a report on some of the contributing factors to low birthweight and save it in a file called `bweight.docx`. We use the Hosmer and Lemeshow dataset.

```
. use https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/lbw
(Hosmer & Lemeshow data)
```

We must first create our document as described in [RPT] [putdocx begin](#). Because we want to add a header to our document, we specify the `header()` option, and we specify the font size for the whole document.

```
. putdocx begin, header(bwtreport) font(, 14)
```

Now we create a paragraph to which we can append text or an image. Here we indicate that we are adding a title, and then we use `putdocx text` to add the title itself.

```
. putdocx paragraph, style(Title)
. putdocx text ("Factors of low birthweight")
```

The paragraph will remain active until we add a new paragraph, a table, a section break, or a page break (see [RPT] [putdocx table](#) and [RPT] [putdocx pagebreak](#)).

◀

### ► Example 2: Define the header content

Next we define the content of our header. To do so, we use the `toheader()` option, which places the contents of the paragraph in the header rather than in the body of our document. We also include page numbers in the header:

```
. putdocx paragraph, toheader(bwtreport)
. putdocx text ("Analysis of birthweight: ")
. putdocx pagenumber
```

Now that our file is set up with a title and header, we add some text to the body of our document. In the next example, we will add a description of our dataset. Because the active paragraph is the one with the header content, we need to start a new paragraph that does not use the `toheader()` option.

```
. putdocx paragraph
```

putdocx paragraph with no options will use your computer’s default font and the 14-point size that we requested with our previous putdocx begin command. See [Options for putdocx paragraph](#) for paragraph formatting options that can be specified to override defaults and settings specified in putdocx begin.



Formatting text

In each putdocx text command, we can specify any valid Stata expression (see [\[U\] 13 Functions and expressions](#)) including, but not limited to, a string of plain text. The expression can be formatted using the [Options for putdocx text](#), which would override the settings specified in putdocx paragraph and putdocx begin.

➤ Example 3: Format text individually

Suppose we want to write a description of lbw.dta to bweight.docx, including the number of women in the dataset and the average birthweight in grams (bwt) for their infants. We use the [summarize](#) command to get these descriptive statistics for the bwt variable.

```
. summarize bwt
```

Variable	Obs	Mean	Std. Dev.	Min	Max
bwt	189	2944.286	729.016	709	4990

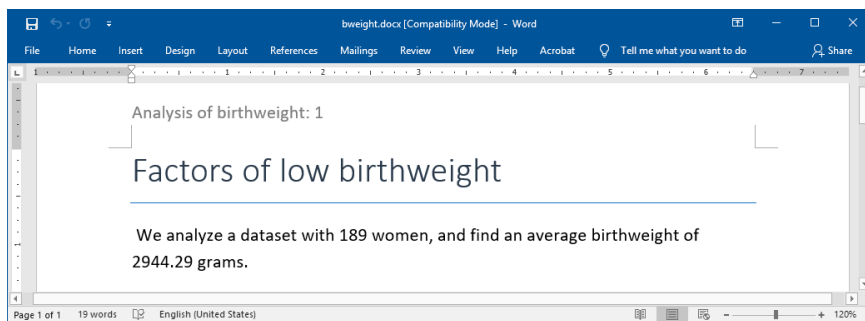
We can use the results from [summarize](#) in the text we write. To see the available returned results, we type [return list](#). (See [\[P\] return](#) for more about stored results from Stata commands.)

```
. return list
scalars:
      r(sum) = 556470
      r(max) = 4990
      r(min) = 709
      r(sd) = 729.0160177275554
      r(Var) = 531464.3541033434
      r(mean) = 2944.285714285714
      r(sum_w) = 189
      r(N) = 189
```

We see that `r(N)` stores the number of observations and `r(mean)` stores the average birthweight. Below, we create a paragraph containing this information and save the changes to our document.

```
. putdocx text (" We analyze a dataset with 'r(N)' women,")
. putdocx text (" and find an average birthweight of ")
. putdocx text ( r(mean)), nformat(%5.2f)
. putdocx text (" grams.")
. putdocx save bweight
```

Above, we formatted the mean birthweight to report only two digits after the decimal. The `bweight.docx` file now looks like this:



## Working with blocks of text

While `putdocx text` is great for customizing small bits of text, it is more efficient to use the `putdocx textblock` commands when adding big blocks of text to your document. To add a paragraph with a block of text to your document, simply enclose your text between the `putdocx textblock` commands as follows:

```
putdocx textblock begin
... block of text to add
putdocx textblock end
```

To instead append a block of text to the active paragraph, use `putdocx textblock append`.

For example, continuing with the Hosmer and Lemeshow dataset, suppose we wanted to add more details about the data. We might include a text block by typing the following:

```
putdocx textblock begin
We use data presented in Hosmer, Lemeshow, and Sturdivant (2013, 24).
These data record women's demographics, such as age and race, and their medical
history, including whether they have a history of hypertension.
putdocx textblock end
```

Inserting a block of text does not limit us to using the same format throughout the block. Before we include this text block in our document, we want to add a bit of text that is formatted differently from the rest of the text block.

We can use the `<<dd_docx_display>>` dynamic tag within our text block to include Stata results and modify the text style. This dynamic tag will execute Stata's `display` command and then replace the tag with its output. We can format the output by specifying any of the [text options](#) that are also available with `putdocx text`. The entire `<<dd_docx_display text_option : display_directive>>` tag must be contained on one line—there cannot be a line break within the tag. See [\[RPT\] Dynamic tags](#) for more information on the `<<dd_docx_display>>` dynamic tag.

### ► Example 4: Formatting text within a block

Let's modify the code above to include the name of the book that presented the dataset. Because we saved our document to view it, we must first create a new active document. Then we add the underlined book title within our text block as follows:

```
putdocx begin, font(, 14)
putdocx textblock begin
```

```
We use data presented in the book
<<dd_docx_display underline: "Applied Logistic Regression, 3rd Edition">>
by Hosmer, Lemeshow, and Sturdivant. These data record women's demographics, such
as age and race, and their medical history, including whether they have
a history of hypertension.
putdocx textblock end
```

In addition to formatting text, we can use the <<dd\_docx\_display>> dynamic tag to include Stata results. For example, we briefly mention how many women in this dataset smoked while pregnant and how many of them gave birth to an infant that weighed less than 2,500 grams. To add this content, we first store some results in local macros and then summarize the data.

```
. count if smoke==1
74
. local smoke = `r(N)´
. count if low==1
59
. local lbw = `r(N)´
. summarize
```

Variable	Obs	Mean	Std. Dev.	Min	Max
id	189	121.0794	63.30363	4	226
low	189	.3121693	.4646093	0	1
age	189	23.2381	5.298678	14	45
lwt	189	129.8201	30.57515	80	250
race	189	1.846561	.9183422	1	3
smoke	189	.3915344	.4893898	0	1
ptl	189	.1957672	.4933419	0	3
ht	189	.0634921	.2444936	0	1
ui	189	.1481481	.3561903	0	1
ftv	189	.7936508	1.059286	0	6
bwt	189	2944.286	729.016	709	4990

We can now reference these macros and any stored results in our block of text, as follows:

```
putdocx textblock begin
Out of the <<dd_docx_display: `r(N)´>> women in this dataset,
<<dd_docx_display shading(yellow): `smoke´>> smoked during their pregnancy, and
<<dd_docx_display : %4.2f `lbw´/`r(N)´>> % gave birth to an infant that weighed
less than 2,500 grams.
putdocx textblock end
```



### Adding an image to the document

We can add any existing .png, .jpg, .emf, and .tif image files to a .docx file with putdocx image. For example, you could include a company logo. We can also add graphs from Stata output. Because Stata graphs use the .gph extension, we must first use graph export to convert the Stata graph to one of the supported image formats; see [G-2] graph export.

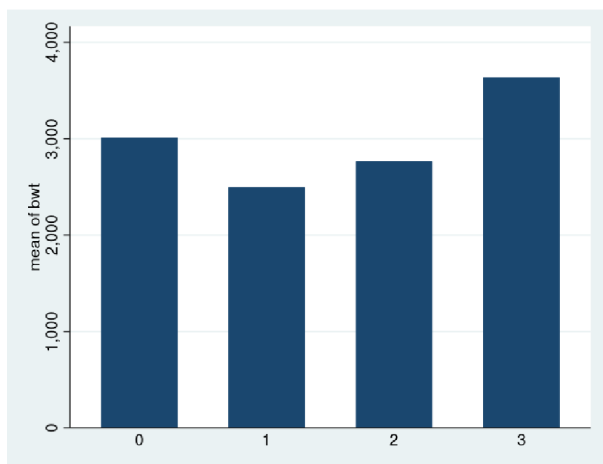
By default, images are embedded in the file. If the image is embedded, it becomes a part of the document and has no further relationship with the original image on the disk. We can instead link the image by specifying the link option. Using linked images means that if the saved image file is updated, then the linked image in the document will reflect the change.

If we add an image after text and want the paragraph that contains the image to have the same format as the active paragraph, we insert the image with no additional step. However, when we want to change the formatting or if there is no active paragraph, we must create one using `putdocx paragraph`. Note that we do not need to declare a new paragraph to insert an image into the cell of a table; see [example 7](#) in [\[RPT\] putdocx table](#).

### ► Example 5: Export a Stata graph

Another probable factor of low birthweight is the mother's history of premature labor. We have a variable (`ptl`) that records the number of times a mother prematurely went into labor. Let's add a graph showing the mean birthweight separately for mothers who never went into premature labor and those who went into premature labor once, twice, and three times. We use the `graph bar` command followed by `graph export` to create a `.png` file.

```
. graph bar bwt, over(ptl)
```

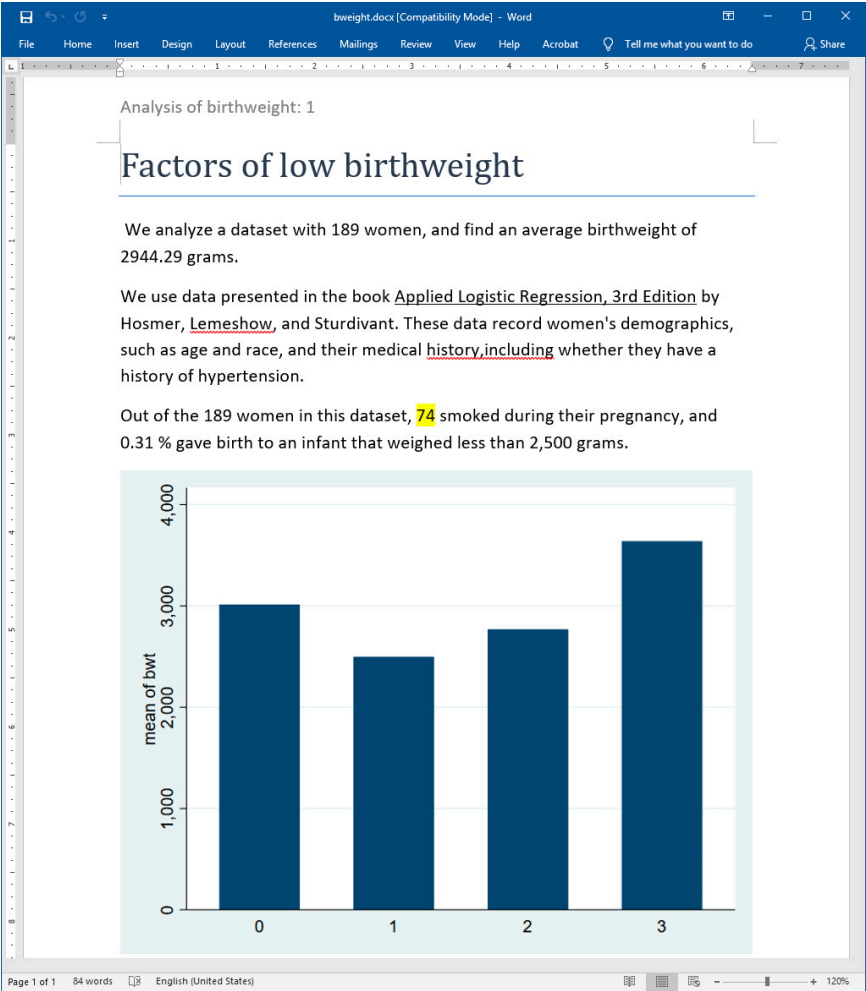


```
. graph export ptl.png
(file ptl.png written in PNG format)
```

Now we use `putdocx image` to add the `.png` file to a document. There is currently no active paragraph, so we declare a new paragraph and specify the `halign()` option to center our image; by default, paragraphs are left-aligned.

```
. putdocx paragraph, halign(center)
. putdocx image ptl.png
. putdocx save bweight, append
```

We append our active document, which includes the two text blocks along with this graph, to the existing content of `bweight.docx`. Here is what the file contains:



### Inserting text files in the document

There may be instances where you are building a document in pieces or where you are collaborating with others to complete a project. For these situations, it may be useful to include previously created text files in your .docx file with `putdocx textfile`. You can even specify the portion of the text file that you want to include in your .docx file.

For example, let's say our classmate wrote a section about the discovery of the effects of smoking during pregnancy. We want to incorporate this in a birthweight report we have saved as `bweight2.docx`. However, the text file he sent also includes a section on hypertension, which we do not want to include. To add his text file to our document, excluding the section on hypertension, we type the following in Stata:

```
putdocx begin
putdocx textfile smoke.txt, stopat(hypertension, contain)
putdocx save bweight2, append
```

The `contain` suboption simply tells Stata that whenever it comes across a line in the text file that contains the word “hypertension”, it should exclude that line and anything that follows.

If we had just typed

```
putdocx begin
putdocx textfile smoke.txt, stopat(hypertension)
putdocx save bweight2, append
```

Stata would have searched for the line in the text file that began with “hypertension” and excluded that line and anything that follows. Because we do not know whether hypertension is found at the beginning or end of the line in the text file, we specified `contain`.

## Also see

[RPT] [putdocx intro](#) — Introduction to generating Office Open XML (.docx) files

[RPT] [putdocx begin](#) — Create an Office Open XML (.docx) file

[RPT] [putdocx pagebreak](#) — Add breaks to an Office Open XML (.docx) file

[RPT] [putdocx table](#) — Add tables to an Office Open XML (.docx) file

[RPT] [Appendix for putdocx](#) — Appendix for putdocx entries

[Description](#)[Remarks and examples](#)[Quick start](#)[Stored results](#)[Syntax](#)[Reference](#)[Options](#)[Also see](#)

## Description

`putdocx table` creates and modifies tables in the active `.docx` file. Tables may be created from several output types, including the data in memory, matrices, and estimation results.

`putdocx describe` describes a table within the active `.docx` file.

## Quick start

Add a table named `tbl1` with three rows and four columns to the document

```
putdocx table tbl1 = (3,4)
```

Set the content of the cell on the first row and first column of `tbl1` to be “My graph” and align the text to the right

```
putdocx table tbl1(1,1) = ("My graph"), halign(right)
```

Insert the image in `mygraph.png` into the second cell in the first column

```
putdocx table tbl1(2,1) = image(mygraph.png)
```

Format the contents in columns two through four with two decimal places

```
putdocx table tbl1(.,2/4), nformat(%5.2f)
```

Describe the contents of table `tbl1`

```
putdocx describe tbl1
```

Add a table named `tbl2` with regression results after `regress`

```
putdocx table tbl2 = etable
```

As above, and add a title

```
putdocx table tbl2 = etable, title("First regression")
```

Add a table of all returned scalars stored after `summarize`

```
putdocx table tbl3 = rscalars
```

Add a table of the data stored in variables `var1` and `var2` from the dataset in memory

```
putdocx table tbl4 = data(var1 var2)
```

Add a table with the contents of matrix `matrix1`, including the row and column names of the matrix

```
putdocx table tbl5 = matrix(matrix1), rownames colnames
```

Add a table with no borders to the header `report1`

```
putdocx begin, header(report1)
```

```
putdocx table tbl6 = (1,2), border(all,nil) toheader(report1)
```



# Syntax

## Add table to document

```

putdocx table tablename = (nrows, ncols) [, table_options]

putdocx table tablename = data(varlist) [if] [in] [, varnames obsno
table_options]

putdocx table tablename = matrix(matname) [, nformat(%fmt) rownames colnames
table_options]

putdocx table tablename = mata(matname) [, nformat(%fmt) table_options]

putdocx table tablename = etable(#1 #2 ... #n) [, table_options]

putdocx table tablename = returnset [, table_options]

```

## Add content to cell

```

putdocx table tablename(i,j) = (exp) [, cell_options pagenumber totalpages]

putdocx table tablename(i,j) = image(filename) [, image_options cell_options]

putdocx table tablename(i,j) = table(mem_tablename) [, cell_options]

```

## Alter table layout

```

putdocx table tablename(i, .) , row_col_options

putdocx table tablename(. , j) , row_col_options

```

## Customize format of cells or table

```

putdocx table tablename(i,j) , cell_options

putdocx table tablename(numlisti, .) , cell_fmt_options

putdocx table tablename(. , numlistj) , cell_fmt_options

putdocx table tablename(numlisti, numlistj) , cell_fmt_options

putdocx table tablename(. , .) , cell_fmt_options

```

## Describe table

```

putdocx describe tablename

```

*tablename* specifies the name of a table. The name must be a valid name according to Stata’s naming conventions; see [U] 11.3 Naming conventions.

<i>table_options</i>	Description
<u>mem</u> table	keep table in memory rather than add it to document
width(#[ <i>unit</i>   %])	set table width
halign( <i>hvalue</i> )	set table horizontal alignment
indent(#[ <i>unit</i> ])	set table indentation
layout( <i>layouttype</i> )	adjust column width
cellmargin( <i>cmarg</i> , #[ <i>unit</i> ])	set margins for each table cell
cellspacing(#[ <i>unit</i> ])	set spacing between adjacent cells and the edges of the table
border( <i>bspec</i> )	set pattern, color, and width for border
headerrow(#)	set number of the top rows that constitute the table header
title( <i>string</i> )	add a title to the table
note( <i>string</i> )	add notes to the table
toheader( <i>hname</i> )	add the table to the header <i>hname</i>
tofooter( <i>fname</i> )	add the table to the footer <i>fname</i>

<i>cell_options</i>	Description
append	append objects to current content of cell
rowspan(#)	merge cells vertically
colspan(#)	merge cells horizontally
span(# <sub>1</sub> , # <sub>2</sub> )	merge cells both horizontally and vertically
linebreak[ (#) ]	add line breaks into the cell
<i>cell_fmt_options</i>	options that control the look of cell contents

<i>image_options</i>	Description
<u>w</u> idth(#[ <i>unit</i> ])	set image width
<u>h</u> eight(#[ <i>unit</i> ])	set image height
linebreak[ (#) ]	add line breaks after image
link	insert link to image file

<i>row_col_options</i>	Description
<u>no</u> split	prevent row from breaking across pages
addrows(# [ , before   after ])	add # rows in specified location
addcols(# [ , before   after ])	add # columns in specified location
drop	drop specified row or column
<i>cell_fmt_options</i>	options that control the look of cell contents

<i>cell_fmt_options</i>	Description
<code>halign(<i>hvalue</i>)</code>	set horizontal alignment
<code>valign(<i>vvalue</i>)</code>	set vertical alignment
<code>border(<i>bspec</i>)</code>	set pattern, color, and width for border
<code>shading(<i>sspec</i>)</code>	set background color, foreground color, and fill pattern
<code>nformat(<i>%fmt</i>)</code>	specify numeric format for cell text
<code>font(<i>fspec</i>)</code>	set font, font size, and font color
<code>bold</code>	format text as bold
<code>italic</code>	format text as italic
<code>*script(sub super)</code>	set subscript or superscript formatting of text
<code>strikeout</code>	strikeout text
<code>underline[ (<i>upattern</i>) ]</code>	underline text using specified pattern
<code>allcaps</code>	format text as all caps
<code>smallcaps</code>	format text as small caps

\*May only be specified when formatting a single cell.

*unit* may be `in` (inch), `pt` (point), `cm` (centimeter), or `twip` (twentieth of a point). An inch is equivalent to 72 points, 2.54 centimeters, or 1440 twips. The default is `in`.

*bspec* is

`bordername [ , bpattern [ , bcolor [ , bwidth] ] ]`

*bordername* specifies the location of the border.

*bpattern* is a keyword specifying the look of the border. The most common patterns are `single`, `dashed`, `dotted`, and `double`. The default is `single`. For a complete list of border patterns, see [Border patterns](#) of [\[RPT\] Appendix for putdocx](#). To remove an existing border, specify `nil` as the *bpattern*.

*bcolor* specifies the border color.

*bwidth* is defined as `#[unit]` and specifies the border width. The default border width is 0.5 points. If `#` is specified without the optional *unit*, inches is assumed. *bwidth* may be ignored if you specify a width larger than that allowed by the program used to view the .docx file. We suggest using 12 points or less or an equivalent specification.

*sspec* is

`bgcolor [ , fgcolor [ , fpattern] ]`

*bgcolor* specifies the background color.

*fgcolor* specifies the foreground color. The default foreground color is `black`.

*fpattern* specifies the fill pattern. The most common fill patterns are `solid` for a solid color (determined by *fgcolor*), `pct25` for 25% gray scale, `pct50` for 50% gray scale, and `pct75` for 75% gray scale. A complete list of fill patterns is shown in [Shading patterns](#) of [\[RPT\] Appendix for putdocx](#).

*fspec* is

```
fontname [ , size [ , color ] ]
```

*fontname* may be any valid font installed on the user’s computer. If *fontname* includes spaces, then it must be enclosed in double quotes.

*size* is a numeric value that represents font size measured in points. The default is 11.

*color* sets the text color.

*bcolor*, *bcolor*, *fgcolor*, and *color* may be one of the colors listed in [Colors](#) of [\[RPT\] Appendix for putdocx](#); a valid RGB value in the form `### ##`, for example, 171 248 103; or a valid RRGGBB hex value in the form `#####`, for example, ABF867.

**Output types for tables**

The following output types are supported when creating a new table using `putdocx table tablename:`

`(nrows, ncols)` creates an empty table with *nrows* rows and *ncols* columns. Microsoft Word allows a maximum of 63 columns in a table.

`data(varlist)` adds the current Stata dataset in memory as a table to the active document. *varlist* contains a list of the variable names from the current dataset in memory.

`matrix(matname)` adds a **matrix** called *matname* as a table to the active document.

`mata(matname)` adds a Mata **matrix** called *matname* as a table to the active document.

`etable[(#1 #2 ... #n)]` adds an automatically generated table to the active document. The table may be derived from the coefficient table of the last estimation command, from the table of margins after the last **margins** command, or from the table of results from one or more models displayed by **estimates table**.

If the estimation command outputs *n* > 1 coefficient tables, the default is to add all tables and assign the corresponding table names *tablename1*, *tablename2*, ..., *tablename<sub>n</sub>*. To specify which tables to add, supply the optional numlist to `etable`. For example, to add only the first and third tables from the estimation output, specify `etable(1 3)`. A few estimation commands do not support the `etable` output type. See [Unsupported estimation commands](#) of [\[RPT\] Appendix for putdocx](#) for a list of estimation commands that have displayed output that is not supported by `putdocx`.

`returnset` exports a group of Stata **return** values to a table in the active document. It is intended primarily for use by programmers and by those who want to do further processing of their exported results in the active document. *returnset* may be one of the following:

<i>returnset</i>	Description
<code>escalars</code>	all ereturned scalars
<code>rscalars</code>	all returned scalars
<code>emacros</code>	all ereturned macros
<code>rmacros</code>	all returned macros
<code>ematrices</code>	all ereturned matrices
<code>rmatrices</code>	all returned matrices
<code>e*</code>	all ereturned scalars, macros, and matrices
<code>r*</code>	all returned scalars, macros, and matrices

The following output types are supported when adding content to an existing table using `putdocx table tablename(i, j)`:

*(exp)* writes a valid Stata expression to a cell; see [U] 13 Functions and expressions.

`image(filename)` adds a portable network graphics (.png), JPEG (.jpg), Windows metafile (.wmf), device-independent bitmap (.dib), enhanced metafile (.emf), or bitmap (.bmp) file to the table cell. If *filename* contains spaces, it must be enclosed in double quotes.

`table(mem_tablename)` adds a previously created table, identified by *mem\_tablename*, to the table cell.

The following combinations of `tablename(numlisti, numlistj)` (see [U] 11.1.8 numlist for valid specifications) can be used to format a cell or range of cells in an existing table:

`tablename(i, j)` specifies the cell on the *i*th row and *j*th column.

`tablename(i, .)` and `tablename(numlisti, .)` specify all cells on the *i*th row or on the rows identified by *numlist<sub>*i*</sub>*.

`tablename(., j)` and `tablename(., numlistj)` specify all cells in the *j*th column or in the columns identified by *numlist<sub>*j*</sub>*.

`tablename(., .)` specifies the whole table.

## Options

Options are presented under the following headings:

*table\_options*  
*cell\_options*  
*row\_col\_options*  
*cell\_fmt\_options*  
*image\_options*

### table\_options

`memtable` specifies that the table be created and held in memory instead of being added to the active document. By default, the table is added to the document immediately after it is created. This option is useful if the table is intended to be added to a cell of another table or to be used multiple times later.

`width(#[unit]%)` sets the table width. # may be an absolute width or a percentage of the default table width, which is determined by the page width of the document. For example, `width(50%)` sets the table width to 50% of the default table width. The default is `width(100%)`.

`halign(hvalue)` sets the horizontal alignment of the table within the page. *hvalue* may be `left`, `right`, or `center`. The default is `halign(left)`.

`indent(#[unit])` specifies the table indentation from the left margin of the current document.

`layout(layouttype)` adjusts the column width of the table. *layouttype* may be `fixed`, `autofitwindow`, or `autofitcontents`. `fixed` means the width is the same for all columns in the table. When `autofitwindow` is specified, the column width automatically resizes to fit the window. When `autofitcontents` is specified, the table width is determined by the overall table layout algorithm, which automatically resizes the column width to fit the contents. The default is `layout(autofitwindow)`.

`cellmargin(cmarg, #[unit])` sets the cell margins for table cells. *cmarg* may be `top`, `bottom`, `left`, or `right`. This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to accommodate different margin settings.

`cellspacing(#[unit])` sets the spacing between adjacent cells and the edges of the table.

`border(bordername [, bpattern [, bcolor [, bwidth]])` adds a single border in the location specified by *bordername*, which may be `start`, `end`, `top`, `bottom`, `insideH` (inside horizontal borders), `insideV` (inside vertical borders), or `all`. Optionally, you may change the pattern, color, and width for the border by specifying *bpattern*, *bcolor*, and *bwidth*.

This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to accommodate different border settings. If multiple `border()` options are specified, they are applied in the order specified from left to right.

`headerrow(#)` sets the top *#* rows to be repeated as header rows at the top of each page on which the table is displayed. This setting has a visible effect only when the table crosses multiple pages.

`varnames` specifies that the variable names be included as the first row in the table when the table is created using the dataset in memory. By default, only the data values are added to the table.

`obsno` specifies that the observation numbers be included as the first column in the table when the table is created using the dataset in memory. By default, only the data values are added to the table.

`nformat(%fmt)` specifies the numeric format to be applied to the source values when creating the table from a Stata or Mata matrix. The default is `nformat(%12.0g)`.

`rownames` specifies that the row names of the Stata matrix be included as the first column in the table. By default, only the matrix values are added to the table.

`colnames` specifies that the column names of the Stata matrix be included as the first row in the table. By default, only the matrix values are added to the table.

`title(string)` inserts a row without borders above the current table. The added row spans all the columns of the table and contains *string* as text. The added row shifts all other table contents down by one row. You should account for this when referencing table cells in subsequent commands.

`note(string)` inserts a row without borders to the bottom of the table. The added row spans all the columns of the table. This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to add notes on new lines within the same cell. Note text is inserted in the order it was specified from left to right.

`toheader(hname)` specifies that the table be added to the header *hname*. The table will not be added to the body of the document.

`tofooter(fname)` specifies that the table be added to the footer *fname*. The table will not be added to the body of the document.

## cell\_options

`append` specifies that the new content for the cell be appended to the current content of the cell. If `append` is not specified, then the current content of the cell is replaced by the new content.

`rowspan(#)` sets the specified cell to span vertically *#* cells downward. If the span exceeds the total number of rows in the table, the span stops at the last row.

`colspan(#)` sets the specified cell to span horizontally *#* cells to the right. If the span exceeds the total number of columns in the table, the span stops at the last column.

`span(#1, #2)` sets the specified cell to span #<sub>1</sub> cells downward and span #<sub>2</sub> cells to the right.

`linebreak[ (#) ]` specifies that one or # line breaks be added after the text, the image, or the table within the cell.

`pagenumber` specifies that the current page number be appended to the end of the new content for the cell. This option only applies when adding an expression to a cell. `pagenumber` applies only to tables being added to a header or footer and cannot be combined with `totalpages`.

`totalpages` specifies that the number of total pages be appended to the end of the new content for the cell. This option only applies when adding an expression to a cell. `totalpages` applies only to tables being added to a header or footer and cannot be combined with `pagenumber`.

## row\_col\_options

`nosplit` specifies that row *i* not split across pages. When a table row is displayed, a page break may fall within the contents of a cell on the row, causing the contents of that cell to be displayed across two pages. `nosplit` prevents this behavior. If the entire row cannot fit on the current page, the row will be moved to the start of the next page.

`addrows(# [ , before|after ])` adds # rows to the current table before or after row *i*. If `before` is specified, the rows are added before the specified row. By default, rows are added after the specified row.

`addcols(# [ , before|after ])` adds # columns to the current table to the right or the left of column *j*. If `before` is specified, the columns are added to the left of the specified column. By default, the columns are added after, or to the right of, the specified column.

`drop` deletes row *i* or column *j* from the table.

## cell\_fmt\_options

`halign(hvalue)` sets the horizontal alignment of the specified cell or of all cells in the specified row, column, or range. *hvalue* may be `left`, `right`, or `center`. The default is `halign(left)`.

`valign(vvalue)` sets the vertical alignment of the specified cell or of all cells in the specified row, column, or range. *vvalue* may be `top`, `bottom`, or `center`. The default is `valign(top)`.

`border(bordername [ , bpattern [ , bcolor [ , bwidth ] ])` adds a single border to the specified cell or to all cells in the specified row, column, or range in the given location. *bordername* may be `start`, `end`, `top`, `bottom`, or `all`. Optionally, you may change the pattern, color, and width for the border by specifying *bpattern*, *bcolor*, and *bwidth*.

This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to accommodate different border settings. If multiple `border()` options are specified, they are applied in the order specified from left to right.

`shading(bgcolor [ , fgcolor [ , fpattern ] )` sets the background color, foreground color, and fill pattern for the specified cell or for all cells in the specified row, column, or range.

`nformat(%fmt)` applies the Stata numeric format *%fmt* to the text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range. This setting only applies when the content of the cell is a numeric value.

`font(fontname [ , size [ , color ] ])` sets the font, font size, and font color for the current text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range. The font size and font color may be specified individually without specifying *fontname*. Use `font("", size)` to specify

font size only. Use `font("", "", color)` to specify font color only. For both cases, the default font will be used.

**bold** applies bold formatting to the current text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range.

**italic** applies italic formatting to the current text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range.

`script(sub|super)` changes the script style of the current text. `script(sub)` makes the text a subscript. `script(super)` makes the text a superscript. `script()` may only be specified when formatting a single cell.

**strikeout** adds a strikeout mark to the current text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range.

**underline** adds an underline to the current text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range. By default, a single underline is used. `underline(upattern)` can be used to change the format of the line, where *upattern* may be any of the patterns listed in [Underline patterns](#) of **[RPT] Appendix for putdocx**. The most common patterns are double, dash, and none.

**allcaps** uses capital letters for all letters of the current text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range.

**smallcaps** uses capital letters for all letters of the current text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range. **smallcaps** uses larger capitals for uppercase letters and smaller capitals for lowercase letters.

## image\_options

`width(#[unit])` sets the width of the image. If the width is larger than the width of the cell, then the width is used. If `width()` is not specified, then the default size is used; the default is determined by the image information and the width of the cell.

`height(#[unit])` sets the height of the image. If `height()` is not specified, then the height of the image is determined by the width and the aspect ratio of the image.

`linebreak[(#)]` specifies that one or # line breaks be added after the new image.

**link** specifies that a link to the image *filename* be inserted into the document. If the image is linked, then the referenced file must be present so that the document can display the image.

## Remarks and examples

Remarks are presented under the following headings:

*Introduction*

*Creating basic tables*

*Exporting summary statistics*

*Exporting estimation results*

*Creating advanced tables*

*Customizing headers and footers with tables*



## Introduction

The suite of `putdocx` commands makes it easy to export summary statistics, estimation results, data, and images in neatly formatted tables. There are different output types available to export a whole coefficient table, matrix, or dataset in a single step. Alternatively, you can create a table by specifying the dimensions and then gradually inserting contents, such as text, images, and stored results. When you create a table, you specify a name for it, which allows you to make further modifications to its contents. You can customize each cell or apply specific formatting to a range of cells with row and column indexes. The variety of formatting options allows you to export a table complete with a title, notes, and a repeating header for tables that span multiple pages.

In the following sections, we demonstrate how to create a variety of tables, ranging from small tables without formatting to more complex, customized tables. In each example, the Word document we create includes only one table, but the `putdocx table` commands we use work in the same way when you insert these tables into a larger document.

## Creating basic tables

When exporting only a few statistics and results, you can create a table from scratch—first specifying the size of the table and then adding content one cell at a time. With this method, it is easy to control the location of each element within the table.

### ► Example 1: Export a basic table

Suppose we want to export a table with just the mean, minimum, and maximum miles per gallon for 1978 automobiles to a `.docx` file. First, we open the dataset and create an active document.

```
. sysuse auto, clear
. putdocx begin
```

Now we create our table with the necessary dimensions. We are exporting three statistics that will appear in one column. We need to allot another column to label these statistics. Therefore, we create a table named `mpgstats` with three rows and two columns, and we add a title. By default, the table width is set at 100%, but because our content is rather short, we set the width to 40% of the default. Otherwise, the table would take up a large portion of our document and look very empty.

```
. putdocx table mpgstats = (3,2), title(Mpg summary statistics) width(40%)
. putdocx describe mpgstats
```

Table name	mpgstats
No. of rows	4
No. of cols	2

When we describe our table, it reports four rows instead of the three we specified. When we add a title, it is included as the first row of the table, without any borders. With our table in place, we now run `summarize mpg` and view the list of stored results:

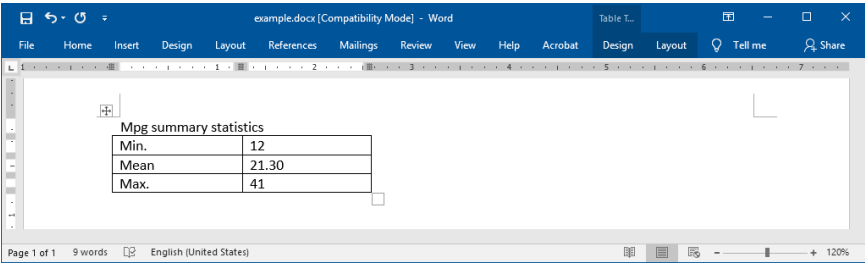
```
. summarize mpg
  Variable |      Obs      Mean  Std. Dev.      Min      Max
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
      mpg |      74    21.2973   5.785503      12      41

. return list
scalars:
      r(N) = 74
    r(sum_w) = 74
    r(mean) = 21.2972972972973
    r(Var) = 33.47204738985561
      r(sd) = 5.785503209735141
    r(min) = 12
    r(max) = 41
    r(sum) = 1576
```

All the statistics we want are stored in `rclass` scalars. We can directly refer to stored results with `putdocx table`. We begin filling in the table by putting the label for the minimum in the second row and first column, `mpgstats(2,1)`. Then we add the value of the minimum in the cell next to it, `mpgstats(2,2)`, by referring to the `r(min)` scalar shown above. Similarly, we add the mean on row 3 and the maximum on row 4.

```
. putdocx table mpgstats(2,1) = ("Min.")
. putdocx table mpgstats(2,2) = (r(min))
. putdocx table mpgstats(3,1) = ("Mean")
. putdocx table mpgstats(3,2) = (r(mean)), nformat(%5.2f)
. putdocx table mpgstats(4,1) = ("Max.")
. putdocx table mpgstats(4,2) = (r(max))
. putdocx save example
```

Because the mean of `mpg` is reported with a lot of accuracy, we specify a numeric formatting. After saving our work, the `example.docx` file contains the following:



Exporting summary statistics

In the example above, we exported just a few summary statistics by filling in the content of each cell in a table. That method would be tedious if we wanted to export several results. Another option is to create a dataset of summary statistics and export the entire dataset to a table, as shown in the example below.



Afterward, we restore the dataset.

```
. restore
```



**Exporting estimation results**

One of the primary uses of `putdocx table` is to export estimation results. Suppose we fit a linear regression model of `mpg` as a function of the car’s gear ratio (`gear_ratio`), turning radius (`turn`), and whether the car is of foreign origin (`foreign`) using `regress`.

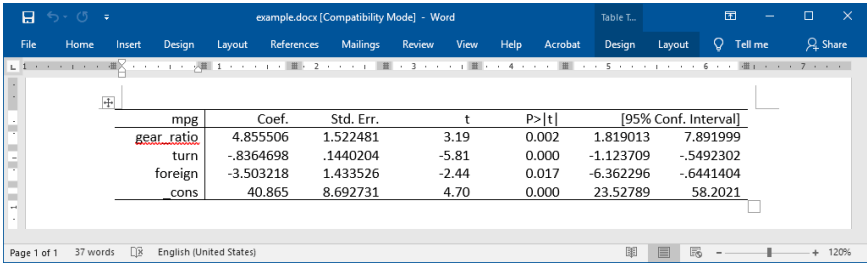
```
. regress mpg gear_ratio turn foreign, noheader
```

mpg	Coef.	Std. Err.	t	P> t	[95% Conf. Interval]	
gear_ratio	4.855506	1.522481	3.19	0.002	1.819013	7.891999
turn	-.8364698	.1440204	-5.81	0.000	-1.123709	-.5492302
foreign	-3.503218	1.433526	-2.44	0.017	-6.362296	-.6441404
_cons	40.865	8.692731	4.70	0.000	23.52789	58.2021

We want to add these regression results to the document. For most estimation commands, we can use the `etable` output type to add the elements of the displayed coefficient table with a single command. As always, we must first create an active document

```
. putdocx begin
. putdocx table reg = etable
. putdocx save example, replace
```

After saving the document and overwriting our previous work, the table is displayed as follows:



If we instead want to display only a few of the reported statistics, we can customize the table accordingly. In [example 3](#), we select a subset of the results and format them.

➤ **Example 3: Export selected estimation results**

Suppose we want to export only the point estimates and confidence intervals from the table above; we can also use `putdocx table` to remove the components that we do not want.

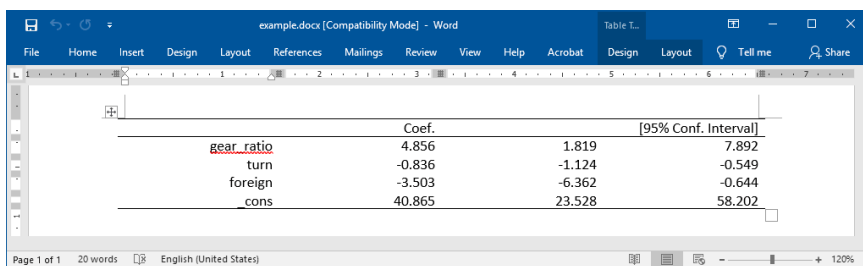
First, we create an active document with a table that contains the estimation results from `regress`, `tbl2`. Although the default is for the table to occupy 100% of the width as determined by the page width of the document, once we drop columns the table width will be adjusted. Therefore, we specify the `width` option to ensure that the table occupies the full page width of the document.

Next, we want to remove the third through the fifth columns. To drop the fifth column, we specify `tbl2(.,5)` followed by the `drop` option. We work from right to left, dropping column five before four, because in this manner, the column numbers to the left of the newly dropped column do not change. Equivalently, we could have dropped the third column three times, because each time we drop it, the previous fourth column becomes the third.

Once we have only the desired statistics, we customize the header row by erasing the text “mpg” from the first column. We then format our table by removing the border on the right side of the first column. To do this, we specify `nil` as the border pattern for the right border. And finally, we format all estimates, in what will now be columns two through four, to have three decimal places by specifying the column indexes as a range.

```
. putdocx begin
. putdocx table tbl2 = etable, width(100%)
. putdocx table tbl2(.,5), drop //drop p-value column
. putdocx table tbl2(.,4), drop //drop t column
. putdocx table tbl2(.,3), drop //drop SE column
. putdocx table tbl2(1,1) = ("") // erase the content of first cell "mpg"
. putdocx table tbl2(.,1), border(right, nil)
. putdocx table tbl2(.,2/4), nformat(%9.3f)
. putdocx save example, replace
```

After saving our work, the table appears in the `example.docx` file as follows:



	Coef.	[95% Conf. Interval]	
gear_ratio	4.856	1.819	7.892
turn	-0.836	-1.124	-0.549
foreign	-3.503	-6.362	-0.644
cons	40.865	23.528	58.202

In this example, because we wanted to use the same number of decimals for all estimates in our table and because we are using the `etable` output type, we could have preemptively set the format with our `regress` command. The modified version of the command is

```
. regress mpg gear_ratio turn foreign, noheader cformat(%9.3f)
```

This avoids the need to issue a separate formatting command.

4

The `etable` output type also works after `estimates table`, and you may find it easier to build a table of selected estimates prospectively. See [example 3](#) in [\[R\] estimates table](#) for an illustration.

## Creating advanced tables

Sometimes, we need to create highly customized tables with complex layouts. `putdocx table` has many features that will allow you to create and incorporate sophisticated tables in your documents.

First, we demonstrate how to create a table from a matrix. While this method works with any Stata matrix, we will demonstrate by using a matrix of stored results from `regress`. See [U] 14 **Matrix expressions** for information on working with Stata matrices.

Exporting a matrix is particularly useful when you want to export results that are returned in a matrix but those results are not the coefficients, standard errors, *p*-values, and confidence intervals reported by a regression command. In addition, a small set of estimation commands do not support the `etable` output type; however, matrices of stored results can be exported when using these commands. For a list of estimation commands that do not support the `etable` output type, see *Unsupported estimation commands* of [RPT] **Appendix for putdocx**.

#### ► Example 4: Export selected estimation results from a matrix

To illustrate the basic use of matrix manipulation of stored results to create a table, we re-create the simple estimation table from [example 3](#). The displayed results returned by `regress` are stored in the matrix `r(table)`, which can be viewed by typing `matrix list r(table)`.

```
. matrix list r(table)
r(table) [9,4]
      gear_ratio      turn      foreign      _cons
b      4.8555057    -.83646975   -3.5032183   40.864996
se     1.5224812     .14402036    1.4335262   8.6927313
t       3.1892057   -5.8079965    -2.4437769   4.7010537
pvalue   .0021348    1.704e-07    .01705791   .00001258
ll      1.8190127   -1.1237093    -6.3622962   23.527891
ul      7.8919987   -.5492302    -.64414044   58.202102
df              70              70              70
crit     1.9944371    1.9944371    1.9944371    1.9944371
eform              0              0              0
```

First, we create the matrix `rtable` as the transpose of `r(table)` because we want to see the variable names in rows. The point estimates and confidence intervals in the regression table can be extracted from the matrix `rtable`. We can extract columns 1, 5, and 6 from `rtable`, combine them, and assign them to another new matrix, `r_table`.

```
. matrix rtable = r(table)'
. matrix r_table = rtable[1...,1], rtable[1...,5..6]
```

Then, we export `r_table` to a new active document as a table with the name `tbl3`.

```
. putdocx begin
. putdocx table tbl3 = matrix(r_table), nformat(%9.3f) rownames colnames
> border(start, nil) border(insideH, nil) border(insideV, nil) border(end, nil)
```

In this table, all values imported from the matrix have been formatted as `%9.3f`. In addition, the row and column names of the matrix `r_table` are included as the first column and first row of the table. We keep only the top and bottom borders of the table by specifying `nil` for the leading edge border (`start`), trailing edge border (`end`), inside horizontal edges border (`insideH`), and inside vertical edges border (`insideV`).

The column names from the matrix may not be exactly what we want; we can modify them by customizing the corresponding cells. We can reset the contents and the horizontal alignment of the cells on the first row to give the columns new titles.

```
. putdocx table tbl3(1,2) = ("Coef."), halign(right)
. putdocx table tbl3(1,3) = ("[95% Conf. Interval]"), halign(right) colspan(2)
```

Afterward, we add back the bottom border of the first row and right-align the cells on the rest of the rows by specifying the row range as two through five.

```
. putdocx table tbl3(1,.), border(bottom)
. putdocx table tbl3(2/5,.), halign(right)
. putdocx save example, replace
```

Our final table will be identical to that shown in [example 3](#).

◀

## ➤ Example 5: Export tabulation results

For commands that do not support the `etable` output type, we can use matrices to export the results. For example, if we want to include a table containing the cross-tabulation of repair records and car origins in our document, we can export this information from a matrix created by the `tabulate` command. To make our table presentable, we begin by adding a value label to the `rep78` variable:

```
. label define repairs 1 "Poor" 2 "Fair" 3 "Average" 4 "Good" 5 "Excellent"
. label values rep78 repairs
```

Next we `tabulate` our variables of interest, storing the frequencies in a matrix named `repairs`, and create an active document. This matrix does not automatically contain the column totals, so we add a column at the end of the table and label it accordingly.

```
. tabulate foreign rep78, matcell(repairs)
```

Car type	Repair Record 1978					Total
	Poor	Fair	Average	Good	Excellent	
Domestic	2	8	27	9	2	48
Foreign	0	0	3	9	9	21
Total	2	8	30	18	11	69

```
. putdocx begin
. putdocx table tbl4 = matrix(repairs), rownames colnames
. putdocx table tbl4(.,6), addcols(1)
. putdocx table tbl4(1,7) = ("Total")
```

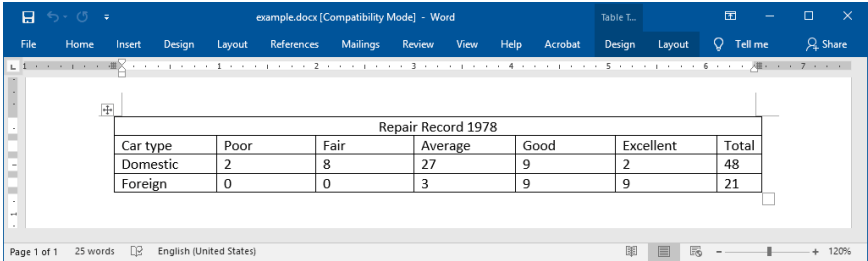
What follows is a loop to fill in the labels we have attached to `rep78`, as well as the labels for the car origin. We begin by looping over the two values of foreign, 0 and 1. We use the extended macro function `label` to store the labels for each category in the macro `'r1b1'`. Within that loop, we also loop over the five columns for repair records. To calculate the row totals, we create a macro `freq'row'_val` that points to the frequency of the given cell. We store the cumulative frequencies in the macro `cumul_freq'row'`, which is incremented in each run of the loop.

```
. forvalues i=0/1 {
2.   local r1b1: label (foreign) 'i'
3.   local row = 'i' + 2
4.   putdocx table tbl4('row',1) = ("'r1b1'")
5.
6.   forvalues j=1/5 {
7.     local c1b1: label (rep78) 'j'
8.     local cstart = 'j' + 1
9.     putdocx table tbl4(1,'cstart') = ("'c1b1'")
10.    local freq'row'_val = repairs['i'+1,'j']
11.    local cumul_freq'row' = 'cumul_freq'row' + 'freq'row'_val'
12.    putdocx table tbl4('row',7) = ("'cumul_freq'row'")
13.  }
```

Once all the frequencies have been exported, we insert a row at the top of the table to provide a title. Additionally, we provide a label for the first column.

```
. putdocx table tbl4(1,.), addrows(1,before)
. putdocx table tbl4(1,1)= ("Repair Record 1978"), colspan(7) halign(center)
> border(left,nil) border(top,nil) border(right,nil)
. putdocx table tbl4(2,1)= ("Car type")
. putdocx save example, replace
```

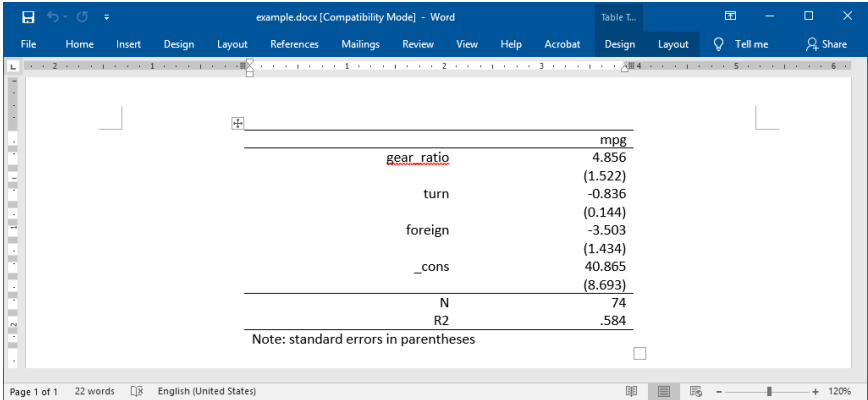
We save our work, overwriting the existing content of our document. The table appears in the example.docx file as follows:



➤ Example 6: Create a table dynamically

In example 3, we created a customized table by dropping the columns we did not want after exporting the whole coefficient table. You may have another layout in mind, or you may be adding statistics other than those included in the coefficient table. For these cases, you can create a table dynamically: start with a simple table, and then add rows or columns to it gradually.

Returning to the regression results from example 3, suppose we want to add an estimation table to the document containing the point estimates, their standard errors, the total number of observations, and the coefficient of determination. The estimation table looks like the following:





To create our table of estimation results, we first create an active document. Then we add a  $1 \times 2$  table with no borders and fill the single row with the dependent variable name, `mpg`. We also set the table width to be 4 inches and put the table in the center of the document. We add a note stating that standard errors are in parentheses.

```
. putdocx begin
. putdocx table tbl5 = (1,2), border(all, nil) width(4) halign(center)
> note(Note: standard errors in parentheses)
. putdocx table tbl5(1,1)=("mpg"), halign(right) colspan(2) border(top)
> border(bottom)
```

Notice that each regressor in the model takes up 2 rows and 2 columns in the table, which means 4 cells. The cell in the first row and first column contains the variable name. The cell in the first row and second column contains the point estimate. The cell in the second row and second column contains the standard errors. Based on this logic, we add two rows for each regressor at the end of the table every time, and we fill in the content and format for each cell one by one.

```
. local row 1
. local vari 1
. foreach x in gear_ratio turn foreign _cons {
2.     putdocx table tbl5('row',.), addrows(2)
3.
.         local b: display %9.3f rtable['vari',1]
4.         local se: display %9.3f rtable['vari',2]
5.         local ++vari
6.
.         local ++row
7.         putdocx table tbl5('row',1) = ("`x'"), halign(right)
8.         putdocx table tbl5('row',2) = ("`b'"), halign(right)
9.         local ++row
10.        local se = strtrim("`se'")
11.        putdocx table tbl5('row',2) = ("(`se')"), halign(right)
12. }
```

Afterward, we add two more rows to the end of the table for the number of observations and the coefficient of determination.

```
. putdocx table tbl5('row',.), addrows(2)
```

We then add each statistic to the table.

```
. local ++row
. putdocx table tbl5('row',1) = ("N"), border(top) halign(right)
. putdocx table tbl5('row',2) = (e(N)), border(top) halign(right)
. local ++row
. local r2: display %9.3f e(r2)
. putdocx table tbl5('row',1) = ("R2"), halign(right) border(bottom)
. putdocx table tbl5('row',2) = (`r2'), halign(right) border(bottom)
. putdocx save example, replace
```

We add a bottom border to the last row to separate the note from the rest of the table and save our work.

◀

Aside from estimation results and summary statistics, you may want to export images to a .docx file. Images can be exported simply by appending them to an active paragraph, or by inserting them in a table. The same formatting options are available regardless of how you export an image. For

example, you can specify the height and width dimensions, or include a link to the image. Of course, when inserting an image in a table, the size is constrained to the dimensions of the given cell. Below, we include an example of how to insert a series of images within a table, complete with informative notes.

### ► Example 7: Nesting images in a table

We might want to add various images to the document and align them side by side, row by row, or both. To be more clear, we use an example to illustrate this purpose. In this example, we use another dataset—the Second National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES II) ([McDowell et al. 1981](#)).

First, we fit a three-way full factorial model of systolic blood pressure on age group, sex, and body mass index (BMI). Then, we estimate the predictive margins for each combination of `agegrp` and `sex` at levels of BMI from 10 through 40 at intervals of 10 and graph the results.

```
. use https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/nhanes2, clear
. regress bpsystol agegrp##sex##c.bmi
  (output omitted)
. forvalues v=10(10)40 {
2.     margins agegrp, over(sex) at(bmi='v')
3.     marginsplot
4.     graph export bmi'v'.png
5. }
  (output omitted)
```

Now, we want to add those four plots into the document, requiring that the margins plots for `bmi=10` and `bmi=20` lay side by side on top of the other two side-by-side margins plots for `bmi=30` and `bmi=40`. It is also required that each plot have a subtitle indicating the level of BMI and that the final figure have a title. This complicated layout can be accomplished using `putdocx table`.

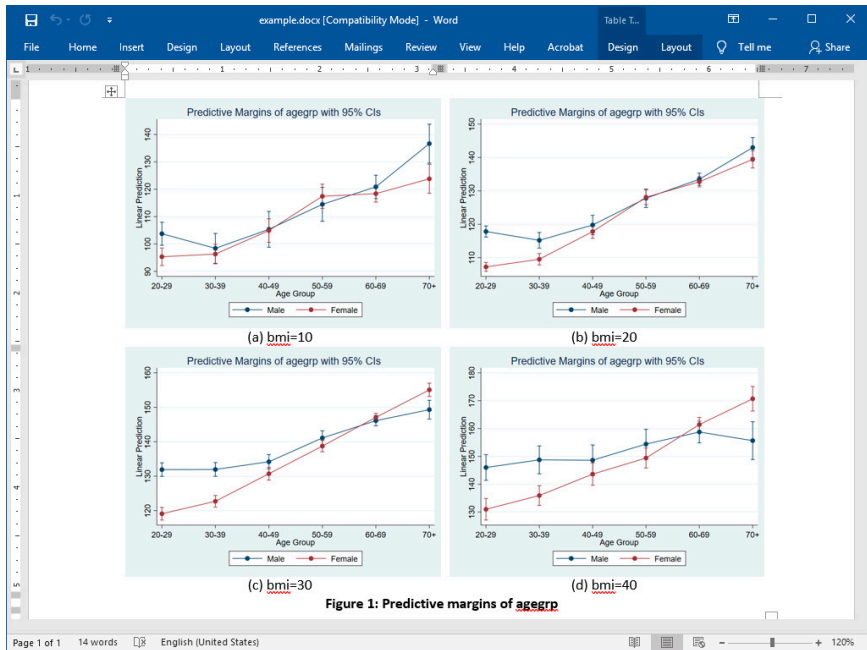
We create an active document and add a  $2 \times 2$  table. We caption our table by using the `note()` option and remove all of its borders for a neater display. In each cell, we add a plot and then append center-aligned text to it.

```
. putdocx begin
. putdocx table tbl6 = (2,2), border(all,nil)
> note(Figure 1: Predictive margins of agegrp) halign(center)
. putdocx table tbl6(1,1)=image(bmi10.png)
. putdocx table tbl6(1,1)=("a) bmi=10"), append halign(center)
. putdocx table tbl6(1,2)=image(bmi20.png)
. putdocx table tbl6(1,2)=("b) bmi=20"), append halign(center)
. putdocx table tbl6(2,1)=image(bmi30.png)
. putdocx table tbl6(2,1)=("c) bmi=30"), append halign(center)
. putdocx table tbl6(2,2)=image(bmi40.png)
. putdocx table tbl6(2,2)=("d) bmi=40"), append halign(center)
```

We formatted our table and the cell contents as we added content to the document. However, we would also like to format the caption. The `note()` option adds an additional row at the end of the table that spans all the columns of the table. We can format the text of the note by specifying the last row (in this case, 3) and either `.` or 1 as the column index. Here, we center-align and bold the text of the caption. Because note text is always placed within a single merged cell, it does not matter how short or long the text is when you identify the cell location.

```
. putdocx table tbl6(3,.), halign(center) bold
. putdocx save example, replace
```

After saving our work to `example.docx`, the table is displayed as follows:



◀

## Customizing headers and footers with tables

Tables are a great way to organize summary statistics and estimation results, but they can also be used to customize the content of a header or footer. For example, you can create a table with a title or logo in one column and page numbers in another. Simply use the `header()` or `footer()` options to place the table content in either the header or the footer of the document.

### ► Example 8: Customize header content with a table

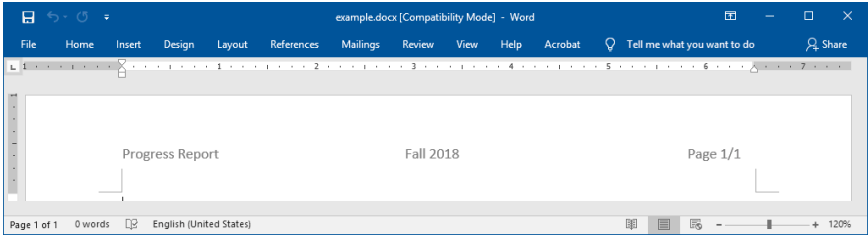
Suppose that we are creating a progress report for the nearby community college that tracks the number of enrollees and their grade point averages. To better organize ourselves, we want to include the semester in the header of our report. Additionally, we want to include the page number and the total page count. We can include all this content in the header of our report by placing it in a table.

We add a blank header to our document by specifying the `header` option with `putdocx begin`. Then we can add the table contents to the header by specifying the `toheader()` option. We place our report title in the first column, the semester in the center column, and the page numbers in the last column. We first list the current `pagenumber`, and we then append a forward slash followed by the total page count.

```
. putdocx begin, header(fall_report)
. putdocx table hdr = (1, 3), border(all, nil) toheader(fall_report)
. putdocx table hdr(1, 1) = ("Progress Report")
. putdocx table hdr(1, 2) = ("Fall 2018"), halign(center)
```

```
. putdocx table hdr(1, 3) = ("Page "), pagenumber
. putdocx table hdr(1, 3) = ("/"), totalpages append
. putdocx table hdr(1, 3), halign(right)
. putdocx save example, replace
```

After saving the document, it contains the following:



Stored results

`putdocx describe tablename` stores the following in `r()`:

Scalars	
<code>r(nrows)</code>	number of rows in the table
<code>r(ncols)</code>	number of columns in the table

Reference

McDowell, A., A. Engel, J. T. Massey, and K. Maurer. 1981. Plan and operation of the Second National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 1976–1980. *Vital and Health Statistics* 1(15): 1–144.

Also see

- [RPT] [putdocx intro](#) — Introduction to generating Office Open XML (.docx) files
- [RPT] [putdocx begin](#) — Create an Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [RPT] [putdocx pagebreak](#) — Add breaks to an Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [RPT] [putdocx paragraph](#) — Add text or images to an Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [RPT] [Appendix for putdocx](#) — Appendix for putdocx entries

Description

This is the collective appendix for the `putdocx` entries: [\[RPT\] putdocx intro](#), [\[RPT\] putdocx begin](#), [\[RPT\] putdocx pagebreak](#), [\[RPT\] putdocx paragraph](#), and [\[RPT\] putdocx table](#).

Border patterns

<i>bpattern</i>	
<code>nil</code>	<code>thickThinMediumGap</code>
<code>single</code>	<code>thinThickThinMediumGap</code>
<code>thick</code>	<code>thinThickLargeGap</code>
<code>double</code>	<code>thickThinLargeGap</code>
<code>dotted</code>	<code>thinThickThinLargeGap</code>
<code>dashed</code>	<code>wave</code>
<code>dotDash</code>	<code>doubleWave</code>
<code>dotDotDash</code>	<code>dashSmallGap</code>
<code>triple</code>	<code>dashDotStroked</code>
<code>thinThickSmallGap</code>	<code>threeDEmboss</code>
<code>thickThinSmallGap</code>	<code>threeDEngrave</code>
<code>thinThickThinSmallGap</code>	<code>outset</code>
<code>thinThickMediumGap</code>	<code>inset</code>

Chapter styles

<i>chapStyle</i>	
<code>Heading1</code>	<code>Heading6</code>
<code>Heading2</code>	<code>Heading7</code>
<code>Heading3</code>	<code>Heading8</code>
<code>Heading4</code>	<code>Heading9</code>
<code>Heading5</code>	

## Colors

*color, bgcolor, fgcolor, bcolor*

---

aliceblue	dodgerblue
antiquewhite	firebrick
aqua	floralwhite
aquamarine	forestgreen
azure	fuchsia
beige	gainsboro
bisque	ghostwhite
black	gold
blanchedalmond	goldenrod
blue	gray
blueviolet	green
brown	greenyellow
burlywood	honeydew
cadetblue	hotpink
chartreuse	indianred
chocolate	indigo
coral	ivory
cornflowerblue	khaki
cornsilk	lavender
crimson	lavenderblush
cyan	lawngreen
darkblue	lemonchiffon
darkcyan	lightblue
darkgoldenrod	lightcoral
darkgray	lightcyan
darkgreen	lightgoldenrodyellow
darkkhaki	lightgray
darkmagenta	lightgreen
darkolivegreen	lightpink
darkorange	lightsalmon
darkorchid	lightseagreen
darkred	lightskyblue
darksalmon	lightslategray
darkseagreen	lightsteelblue
darkslateblue	lightyellow
darkslategray	lime
darkturquoise	limegreen
darkviolet	linen
deeppink	magenta
deepskyblue	maroon
dimgray	

*color, bgcolor, fgcolor, bcolor, continued*

---

mediumaquamarine	powerblue
mediumblue	purple
mediumorchid	red
mediumpurple	rosybrown
mediumseagreen	royalblue
mediumslateblue	saddlebrown
mediumspringgreen	salmon
mediumturquoise	sandybrown
mediumvioletred	seagreen
midnightblue	seashell
mintcream	sienna
mistyrose	silver
moccasin	skyblue
navajowhite	slateblue
navy	slategray
oldlace	snow
olive	springgreen
olivedrab	steelblue
orange	tan
orangered	teal
orchid	thistle
palegoldenrod	tomato
palegreen	turquoise
paleturquoise	violet
palevioletred	wheat
papayawhip	white
peachpuff	whitesmoke
peru	yellow
pink	yellowgreen
plum	

---

## Page number formats

*pnformat*

---

cardinal_text	lower_letter
decimal	lower_roman
decimal_enclosed_circle	none
decimal_enclosed_fullstop	ordinal_text
decimal_enclosed_paren	upper_letter
decimal_zero	upper_roman

---

Paragraph styles

<i>pstyle</i>	
Title	Heading5
Subtitle	Heading6
Heading1	Heading7
Heading2	Heading8
Heading3	Heading9
Heading4	

Shading patterns

<i>fpattern</i>	
nil	pct20
clear	pct25
solid	pct30
horzStripe	pct35
vertStripe	pct37
reverseDiagStripe	pct40
diagStripe	pct45
horzCross	pct50
diagCross	pct55
thinHorzStripe	pct60
thinVertStripe	pct62
thinReverseDiagStripe	pct65
thinDiagStripe	pct70
thinHorzCross	pct75
thinDiagCross	pct80
pct5	pct85
pct10	pct87
pct12	pct90
pct15	pct95



## Underline patterns

*upattern*

---

<code>none</code>	<code>dashLong</code>
<code>single</code>	<code>dashLongHeavy</code>
<code>words</code>	<code>dotDash</code>
<code>double</code>	<code>dashDotHeavy</code>
<code>thick</code>	<code>dotDotDash</code>
<code>dotted</code>	<code>dashDotDotHeavy</code>
<code>dottedHeavy</code>	<code>wave</code>
<code>dash</code>	<code>wavyHeavy</code>
<code>dashedHeavy</code>	<code>wavyDouble</code>

---

## Unsupported estimation commands

Command name	Available stored results documented in
<code>bayesmh</code>	[BAYES] <a href="#">bayesmh</a>
<code>bayes</code>	[BAYES] <a href="#">bayes</a>
<code>boxcox</code>	[R] <a href="#">boxcox</a>
<code>exlogistic</code>	[R] <a href="#">exlogistic</a>
<code>expoisson</code>	[R] <a href="#">expoisson</a>
<code>menl</code>	[ME] <a href="#">menl</a>
<code>rocfits</code>	[R] <a href="#">rocfits</a>
<code>varbasic</code>	[TS] <a href="#">varbasic</a>
<code>xthtaylor</code>	[XT] <a href="#">xthtaylor</a>
<code>xtpcse</code>	[XT] <a href="#">xtpcse</a>

---

## Also see

- [RPT] [putdocx intro](#) — Introduction to generating Office Open XML (.docx) files
- [RPT] [putdocx begin](#) — Create an Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [RPT] [putdocx pagebreak](#) — Add breaks to an Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [RPT] [putdocx paragraph](#) — Add text or images to an Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [RPT] [putdocx table](#) — Add tables to an Office Open XML (.docx) file

[Description](#)[Remarks and examples](#)[Quick start](#)[Appendix](#)[Menu](#)[References](#)[Syntax](#)[Also see](#)[Options](#)

## Description

`putexcel` writes Stata [expressions](#), [matrices](#), images, and [returned results](#) to an Excel file. It may also be used to format cells in an Excel worksheet. This allows you to automate exporting and formatting of, for example, Stata estimation results. Excel 1997/2003 (.xls) files and Excel 2007/2010 and newer (.xlsx) files are supported.

`putexcel set` sets the Excel file to create, modify, or replace in subsequent `putexcel` commands. You must set the destination file before using any other `putexcel` commands. `putexcel save` closes a file opened using the command `putexcel set ...`, open and saves the file in memory to disk. `putexcel clear` clears the file information set by `putexcel set`. `putexcel describe` displays the file information set by `putexcel set`.

For an advanced syntax to simultaneously write multiple output types, see [\[RPT\] putexcel advanced](#).

## Quick start

Declare the first sheet of `myresults.xlsx` to be the destination workbook for subsequent `putexcel` commands

```
putexcel set myresults
```

As above, but use a new sheet named Estimation Results and replace the existing workbook

```
putexcel set myresults, replace sheet("Estimation Results")
```

Write the text “Coefficients” to cell B1

```
putexcel B1 = "Coefficients"
```

Add variable names and estimated coefficients in the column under “Coefficients” after [regress](#), and format coefficients with two decimal places

```
matrix b = e(b)'  
putexcel A2 = matrix(b), rownames nformat(number_d2)
```

Format the header row of the table with a bottom border and bold text

```
putexcel (A1:B1), bold border(bottom)
```

Add a PNG of a [margins](#) plot saved to disk as `mymargins.png` where the upper-left corner is aligned with the upper-left corner of cell D2

```
marginsplot, name(mymargins)  
graph export mymargins.png, name(mymargins)  
putexcel D2 = image(mymargins.png)
```

## Menu

File > Export > Results to Excel spreadsheet (\*.xls;\*.xlsx)

# Syntax

*Set workbook for export*

```
putexcel set filename [ , set_options ]
```

*Write expression to Excel*

```
putexcel ul_cell = exp [ , expression_options format_options ]
```

*Export Stata matrix to Excel*

```
putexcel ul_cell = matrix(matname) [ , matrix_options format_options ]
```

*Export Stata graph, path diagram, or other image to Excel*

```
putexcel ul_cell = image(filename)
```

*Export returned results to Excel*

```
putexcel ul_cell = returnset [ , colwise overwritefmt ]
```

*Write formula to Excel*

```
putexcel ul_cell = formula(formula) [ , overwritefmt ]
```

*Format cells*

```
putexcel cellrange, overwritefmt format_options
```

*Add the coefficient table from the last estimation command to Excel file*

```
putexcel ul_cell = etable[ (#1 #2 ... #n) ]
```

*Close and save Excel file*

```
putexcel save
```

*Describe current export settings*

```
putexcel describe
```

*Clear current export settings*

```
putexcel clear
```

*ul\_cell* is a valid Excel upper-left cell specified using standard Excel notation, for example, A1 or D4.

*cellrange* is *ul\_cell* or *ul\_cell*:*lr\_cell*, where *lr\_cell* is a valid Excel lower-right cell, for example, A1, A1:D1, A1:A4, or A1:D4.

<i>set_options</i>	Description
<code>open</code>	open Excel file in memory
<code>modify</code>	modify Excel file
<code>replace</code>	overwrite Excel file
<code>sheet(sheetname[, replace])</code>	specify the worksheet to use; the default sheet name is <code>Sheet1</code>

<i>expression_options</i>	Description
---------------------------	-------------

Main	
<code>overwritefmt</code>	overwrite existing cell formatting when exporting new content
<code>asdate</code>	convert Stata date (%td-formatted) <i>exp</i> to an Excel date
<code>asdatetime</code>	convert Stata datetime (%tc-formatted) <i>exp</i> to an Excel datetime
<code>asdatenum</code>	convert Stata date <i>exp</i> to an Excel date number, preserving the cell's format
<code>asdatetimeum</code>	convert Stata datetime <i>exp</i> to an Excel datetime number, preserving the cell's format

<i>matrix_options</i>	Description
-----------------------	-------------

Main	
<code>overwritefmt</code>	overwrite existing cell formatting when exporting new content
<code>names</code>	also write row names and column names for matrix <i>matname</i> ; may not be combined with <code>rownames</code> or <code>colnames</code>
<code>rownames</code>	also write matrix row names for matrix <i>matname</i> ; may not be combined with <code>names</code> or <code>colnames</code>
<code>colnames</code>	also write matrix column names for matrix <i>matname</i> ; may not be combined with <code>names</code> or <code>rownames</code>

<i>format_options</i>	Description
Number	
<u>nformat</u> ( <i>excelnfmt</i> )	specify format for numbers
Alignment	
<u>left</u>	left-align text
<u>hcenter</u>	center text horizontally
<u>right</u>	right-align text
<u>top</u>	vertically align text with the top
<u>vcenter</u>	center text vertically
<u>bottom</u>	vertically align text with the bottom
<u>txtindent</u> (#)	indent text by # spaces; default is 0
<u>txtrotate</u> (#)	rotate text by # degrees; default is 0
[no] <u>txtwrap</u>	wrap text within each cell
[no] <u>shrinkfit</u>	shrink text to fit the cell width
<u>merge</u>	merge cells in <i>cellrange</i>
<u>unmerge</u>	separate merged cells identified by <i>ul_cell</i>
Font	
<u>font</u> ( <i>fontname</i> [, <i>size</i> [, <i>color</i> ]])	specify font, font size, and font color
[no] <u>italic</u>	format text as italic
[no] <u>bold</u>	format text as bold
[no] <u>underline</u>	underline text in the specified cells
[no] <u>strikeout</u>	strikeout text in the specified cells
<u>script</u> (sub   super   none)	specify subscript or superscript formatting
Border	
<u>border</u> ( <i>border</i> [, <i>style</i> [, <i>color</i> ]])	specify horizontal and vertical cell border style
<u>dborder</u> ( <i>direction</i> [, <i>style</i> [, <i>color</i> ]])	specify diagonal cell border style
Fill	
<u>fpattern</u> ( <i>pattern</i> [, <i>fgcolor</i> [, <i>bgcolor</i> ]])	specify fill pattern for cells

## Output types

*exp* writes a valid Stata expression to a cell; see [U] [13 Functions and expressions](#). Stata dates and datetimes differ from Excel dates and datetimes. To properly export date and datetime values, use *asdate* and *asdatetime*.

*matrix*(*matname*) writes the values from a Stata matrix to Excel. Stata determines where to place the data in Excel by default from the size of the matrix (the number of rows and columns) and the location you specified in *ul\_cell*. By default, *ul\_cell* contains the first element of *matname*, and matrix row names and column names are not written.

*image*(*filename*) writes a portable network graphics (.png), JPEG (.jpg), Windows metafile (.wmf), device-independent bitmap (.dib), enhanced metafile (.emf), or bitmap (.bmp) file to an Excel worksheet. The upper-left corner of the image is aligned with the upper-left corner of the specified *ul\_cell*. The image is not resized. If *filename* contains spaces, it must be enclosed in double quotes.

*returnset* is a shortcut name that is used to identify a group of [return](#) values. It is intended primarily for use by programmers and by those who intend to do further processing of their exported results in Excel. *returnset* may be any one of the following:

<i>returnset</i>	
<u>escalars</u>	<u>escalarmnames</u>
<u>rscalars</u>	<u>rscalarnames</u>
<u>emacros</u>	<u>emacronames</u>
<u>rmacros</u>	<u>rmacronames</u>
<u>ematrices</u>	<u>ematrixnames</u>
<u>rmatrices</u>	<u>rmatrixnames</u>
<u>e*</u>	<u>enames</u>
<u>r*</u>	<u>rnames</u>

**formula**(*formula*) writes an Excel formula to the cell specified in *ul\_cell*. *formula* may be any valid Excel formula. Stata does not validate formulas; the text is passed literally to Excel.

**etable**[ (*#1 #2 ... #n*) ] adds an automatically generated table to an Excel file starting in *ul\_cell*. The table may be derived from the coefficient table of the last estimation command, from the table of margins after the last [margins](#) command, or from the table of results from one or more models displayed by [estimates table](#).

If the estimation command outputs *n* > 1 coefficient tables, the default is to add all tables and assign the corresponding table names *tablename1*, *tablename2*, ..., *tablename<sub>n</sub>*. To specify which tables to add, supply the optional numlist to **etable**. For example, to add only the first and third tables from the estimation output, specify **etable**(1 3). A few estimation commands do not support the **etable** output type. See [Unsupported estimation commands](#) in [\[RPT\] Appendix for putdocx](#) for a list of estimation commands that are not supported by putexcel.

## Options

Set

**open** permits putexcel **set** to open the Excel file in memory for modification. The Excel file is written to disk when putexcel **save** is issued.

**modify** permits putexcel **set** to modify an Excel file.

**replace** permits putexcel **set** to overwrite an existing Excel workbook. The workbook is overwritten when the first putexcel command is issued unless the **open** option is used.

**sheet**(*sheetname* [ , **replace** ]) saves to the worksheet named *sheetname*. If there is no worksheet named *sheetname* in the workbook, then a new sheet named *sheetname* is created. If this option is not specified, **Sheet1** is used.

**replace** permits putexcel **set** to overwrite *sheetname* if it exists in the specified *filename*.

Main

**overwritefmt** causes putexcel to remove any existing cell formatting in the cell or cells to which it is writing new output. By default, all existing cell formatting is preserved. **overwritefmt**, when combined with a cell range, writes the cell format more efficiently.

`asdate` tells `putexcel` that the specified *exp* is a Stata `%td`-formatted date that should be converted to an Excel date with `m/d/yyyy` Excel date format.

This option has no effect if an *exp* is not specified as the output type.

`asdatetime` tells `putexcel` that the specified *exp* is a Stata `%tc`-formatted datetime that should be converted to an Excel datetime with `m/d/yyyy h:mm` Excel datetime format.

This option has no effect if an *exp* is not specified as the output type.

`asdatenum` tells `putexcel` that the specified *exp* is a Stata `%td`-formatted date that should be converted to an Excel date number, preserving the cell's format.

This option has no effect if an *exp* is not specified as the output type.

`asdatetimeum` tells `putexcel` that the specified *exp* is a Stata `%tc`-formatted datetime that should be converted to an Excel datetime number, preserving the cell's format.

This option has no effect if an *exp* is not specified as the output type.

`names` specifies that matrix row names and column names be written into the Excel worksheet along with the matrix values. If you specify `names`, then `ul_cell` will be blank, the cell to the right of it will contain the name of the first column, and the cell below it will contain the name of the first row. `names` may not be specified with `rownames` or `colnames`.

This option has no effect if `matrix()` is not specified as the output type.

`rownames` specifies that matrix row names be written into the Excel worksheet along with the matrix values. If you specify `rownames`, then `ul_cell` will contain the name of the first row. `rownames` may not be specified with `names` or `colnames`.

This option has no effect if `matrix()` is not specified as the output type.

`colnames` specifies that matrix column names be written into the Excel worksheet along with the matrix values. If you specify `colnames`, then `ul_cell` will contain the name of the first column. `colnames` may not be specified with `names` or `rownames`.

This option has no effect if `matrix()` is not specified as the output type.

`colwise` specifies that if a *returnset* is used, the values written to the Excel worksheet be written in consecutive columns. By default, the values are written in consecutive rows.

This option has no effect if a *returnset* is not specified as the output type.

Number

`nformat(excelfmt)` changes the numeric format of a cell range. Codes for commonly used formats are shown in the table of numeric formats in the [Appendix](#). However, any valid Excel format is permitted. Formats are formed from combinations of the following symbols.

Symbol	Description	Cell value	Fmt code	Cell displays
0	Digit placeholder (add zeros)	8.9	#.00	8.90
#	Digit placeholder (no zeros)	8.9	#.##	8.9
?	Digit placeholder (add space)	8.9	0.0?	8.9
.	Decimal point			
%	Percentage	.1	%	10%
,	Thousands separator	10000	#,###	10,000
E- E+ e- e+	Scientific format	12200000	0.00E+00	1.22E+07
\$-+/( ):space	Display the symbol	12	(000)	(012)
\	Escape character	3	0\!	3!
*	Repeat character (fill in cell width)	3	3*	3xxxxx
-	Skip width of next character	-1.2	_0.0	1.2
"text"	Display text in quotes	1.23	0.00 "a"	1.23 a
@	Text placeholder	b	"a"@ "c"	abc

Formats that contain spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

Alignment

`left` sets the specified cells to have contents left-aligned within the cell. `left` may not be combined with `right` or `hcenter`. Right-alignment is the Excel default for numeric values and need not be specified when outputting numbers.

`hcenter` sets the specified cells to have contents horizontally centered within the cell. `hcenter` may not be combined with `left` or `right`.

`right` sets the specified cells to have contents right-aligned within the cell. `right` may not be combined with `left` or `hcenter`. Left-alignment is the Excel default for text and need not be specified when outputting strings.

`top` sets the specified cells to have contents vertically aligned with the top of the cell. `top` may not be combined with `bottom` or `vcenter`.

`vcenter` sets the specified cells to have contents vertically aligned with the center of the cell. `vcenter` may not be combined with `top` or `bottom`.

`bottom` sets the specified cells to have contents vertically aligned with the bottom of the cell. `bottom` may not be combined with `top` or `vcenter`.

`txtindent(#)` sets the text indentation in each cell in a cell range. `#` must be an integer between 0 and 15.

`txtrotate(#)` sets the text rotation in each cell in a cell range. `#` must be an integer between 0 and 180 or equal to 255. `txtrotate(0)` is equal to no rotation and is the default. `txtrotate(255)` specifies vertical text. Values 1–90 rotate the text counterclockwise 1 to 90 degrees. Values 91–180 rotate the text clockwise 1 to 90 degrees.



`txtwrap` and `nottxtwrap` specify whether the text is to be wrapped in a cell or within each cell in a range of cells. The default is no wrapping. `nottxtwrap` has an effect only if the cell or cells were previously formatted to wrap. `txtwrap` may not be specified with `shrinkfit`.

`shrinkfit` and `noshrinkfit` specify whether the text is to be shrunk to fit in the cell width of a cell or in each cell of a range of cells. The default is no shrinking. `noshrinkfit` has an effect only if the cell or cells were previously formatted to shrink text to fit. `shrinkfit` may not be specified with `txtwrap`.

`merge` tells Excel to merge cells in the specified cell range. `merge` may be combined with `left`, `right`, `hcenter`, `top`, `bottom`, and `vcenter` to format the merged cell. Merging cells that contain data in each cell will result in the upper-leftmost data being kept.

Once you have merged cells, you can refer to the merged cell by using any single cell from the specified [cellrange](#). For example, if you specified a [cellrange](#) of `A1:B2`, you could refer to the merged cell using `A1`, `B1`, `A2`, or `B2`.

`unmerge` tells Excel to unmerge previously merged cells. When using `unmerge`, you only need to use a single cell from the merged cell in the previously specified [cellrange](#).

#### Font

`font(fontname [, size [, color]])` sets the font, font size, and font color for each cell in a cell range. If `font()` is not specified, the Excel defaults are preserved.

*fontname* may be any valid Excel font. If *fontname* includes spaces, then it must be enclosed in double quotes. What constitutes a valid Excel font is determined by the version of Excel that is installed on the user's computer.

*size* is a numeric value that represents any valid Excel font size. The default is 12.

*color* may be one of the colors listed in the table of colors in the [Appendix](#) or may be a valid RGB value in the form `"### ###"`. If no *color* is specified, then Excel workbook defaults are used.

`italic` and `noitalic` specify whether to italicize or unitalicize the text in a cell or range of cells. The default is for text to be unitalicized. `noitalic` has an effect only if the cell or cells were previously italicized.

`bold` and `nobold` specify whether to bold or unbold the text in a cell or range of cells. The default is for text to be unbold. `nobold` has an effect only if the cell or cells were previously formatted as bold.

`underline` and `nounderline` specify whether to underline the text or remove the underline from the text in a cell or range of cells. The default is for text not to be underlined. `nounderline` has an effect only if the cell or cells previously contained underlined text.

`strikeout` and `nostrikeout` specify whether to strikeout the text or remove the strikeout from the text in a cell or range of cells. The default is for text not to have a strikeout mark. `nostrikeout` has an effect only if the cell or cells previously had a strikeout mark.

`script(sub|super|none)` changes the script style of the cell. `script(sub)` makes all text in a cell or range of cells a subscript. `script(super)` makes all text in a cell or range of cells a superscript. `script(none)` removes all subscript or superscript formatting from a cell or range of cells. Specifying `script(none)` has an effect only if the cell or cells were previously formatted as subscript or superscript.

**Border**

**border**(*border* [ , *style* [ , *color* ] ] ) sets the cell border, style, and color for a cell or range of cells.

*border* may be **all**, **left**, **right**, **top**, or **bottom**.

*style* is a keyword specifying the look of the border. The most common styles are **thin**, **medium**, **thick**, and **double**. The default is **thin**. For a complete list of border styles, see the [Appendix](#). To remove an existing border, specify **none** as the *style*.

*color* may be one of the colors listed in the table of colors in the [Appendix](#) or may be a valid RGB value in the form "**### ###**". If no *color* is specified, then Excel workbook defaults are used.

**dborder**(*direction* [ , *style* [ , *color* ] ] ) sets the cell diagonal border direction, style, and color for a cell or range of cells.

*direction* may be **down**, **up**, or **both**. **down** draws a line from the upper-left corner of the cell to the lower-right corner of the cell or, for a range of cells, from the upper-left corner of *ul\_cell* to the lower-right corner of *lr\_cell*. **up** draws a line from the lower-left corner of the cell to the upper-right corner of the cell or, for a range of cells, from the lower-left corner of the area defined by *ul\_cell*:*lr\_cell* to the upper-right corner.

*style* is a keyword specifying the look of the border. The most common styles are **thin**, **medium**, **thick**, and **double**. The default is **thin**. For a complete list of border styles, see the [Appendix](#). To remove an existing border, specify **none** as the *style*.

*color* may be one of the colors listed in the table of colors in the [Appendix](#) or may be a valid RGB value in the form "**### ###**". If no *color* is specified, then Excel workbook defaults are used.

**Fill**

**fpattern**(*pattern* [ , *fgcolor* [ , *bicolor* ] ] ) sets the fill pattern, foreground color, and background color for a cell or range of cells.

*pattern* is a keyword specifying the fill pattern. The most common fill patterns are **solid** for a solid color (determined by *fgcolor*), **gray25** for 25% gray scale, **gray50** for 50% gray scale, and **gray75** for 75% gray scale. A complete list of fill patterns is shown in the [Appendix](#). To remove an existing fill pattern from the cell or cells, specify **none** as the *pattern*.

*fgcolor* specifies the foreground color. The default foreground color is **black**. *fgcolor* may be any of the colors listed in the table of colors in the [Appendix](#) or may be a valid RGB value in the form "**### ###**".

*bicolor* specifies the background color. *bicolor* may be any of the colors listed in the table of colors in the [Appendix](#) or may be a valid RGB value in the form "**### ###**". If no *bicolor* is specified, then Excel workbook defaults are used.

## Remarks and examples

Remarks are presented under the following headings:

- [Introduction](#)
- [Writing expressions and formatting cells](#)
- [Exporting summary statistics to Excel](#)
- [Export estimation results](#)
- [Export graphs and other images](#)

## Introduction

The `putexcel` command is a means of directly controlling the layout of an Excel file. As such, `putexcel` is designed to mimic the options and functionality of Excel, and many options of `putexcel` are simply pass-through arguments to Excel itself. In what follows, we provide documentation of how to use the `putexcel` command. However, for many options, such as the specification of valid numeric formats, font names, and font sizes, users are encouraged to also consult the help for their specific version of Excel.

`putexcel` may be used with Excel 1997/2003 (.xls) and Excel 2007/2010 and newer (.xlsx). `putexcel` looks at the file extension .xls or .xlsx to determine which Excel format to write. It is supported on Windows, Mac, and Linux.

`putexcel` also has an advanced syntax that allows you to write multiple types of output to different cells or cell ranges at a time; see [RPT] [putexcel advanced](#).

### ► Example 1: Setting the workbook and sheet

Before we can write to an Excel workbook using `putexcel`, we need to tell Stata what the destination is. We do this using the `putexcel set` command. For the next several examples, we will use an Excel file named `myresults.xlsx` and a sheet named `Descriptive`.

```
. putexcel set myresults.xlsx, sheet(Descriptive)
```

If we had not specified the sheet name, `putexcel set` would have defaulted to using the first sheet in the workbook.



## Writing expressions and formatting cells

Although there are many uses for `putexcel`, one of the primary reasons to use the command is to keep track of the results of analyses in a single location for later use. The next several examples show how to export results to a single location for easy sharing and to create formatted tables that can be placed in a paper or poster.

Suppose we are analyzing data about the number of times young adults visited a news website. These data are contained in `website.dta` and described in detail in [example 1](#) of [R] [ivpoisson](#).

```
. use https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/website
(Visits to website)
. describe
Contains data from https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/website.dta
   obs:          500                Visits to website
  vars:           6                11 Feb 2018 14:45
```

variable name	storage type	display format	value label	variable label
visits	byte	%8.0g		Visits to website
female	byte	%8.0g		Female
ad	byte	%8.0g		Advertisements
time	double	%10.0g		Time on internet (hrs.)
phone	double	%10.0g		Time on phone (hrs.)
frfam	double	%10.0g		Time with friends and out of town family (hrs.)

Sorted by:

We want to create a formatted table of summary statistics for men and women.

## ► Example 2: Write expression to cell

We start by writing column headers to the first row of our worksheet.

```
. putexcel A1 = "Variable"
file myresults.xlsx saved

. putexcel B1 = "Men"
file myresults.xlsx saved

. putexcel C1 = "Women"
file myresults.xlsx saved
```

Each of these commands opens the Excel workbook, writes the text to the specified cell, and then closes the workbook. We also use expressions to write out specific results (see [example 4](#)).



## ► Example 3: Format a range of cells

We may also want to make the column headings bold and add a border underneath. We can format a range of cells by specifying a cell range and the appropriate formatting options.

```
. putexcel A1:C1, bold border(bottom)
file myresults.xlsx saved
```

We also could have specified the **bold** and **border()** options each time we exported the column heading in [example 2](#).

```
. putexcel A1 = "Variable", bold border(bottom)
file myresults.xlsx saved

. putexcel B1 = "Men", bold border(bottom)
file myresults.xlsx saved

. putexcel C1 = "Women", bold border(bottom)
file myresults.xlsx saved
```

Whether you apply formatting at the time you write to Excel or for a range will likely depend on the number of options you have and the number of cells affected by common formatting options.



## □ Technical note

When formatting many cells within a workbook, make sure to write cell formats efficiently using cell ranges. If you do not, you can overload the Excel workbook with too many formats, causing the Excel workbook to become large and, in extreme cases, the cell formatting to stop working. Take the following example:

```
putexcel set test.xlsx
putexcel A1 = "Sex"
putexcel A1, bold
putexcel A1, italic
putexcel A1, font("Arial", 16, "black")

putexcel B1 = "Age"
putexcel B1, bold
putexcel B1, italic
putexcel B1, font("Arial", 16, "black")

putexcel C1 = "Race"
putexcel C1, bold
putexcel C1, italic
putexcel C1, font("Arial", 16, "black")
```

Creating the Excel workbook with the commands above will create nine format entries for the worksheet. A more efficient way to write the cell formats is

```
putexcel set test.xlsx
putexcel A1 = "Sex"
putexcel B1 = "Age"
putexcel C1 = "Race"

putexcel A1:C1, bold italic font("Arial", 16, "black")
```

Now the Excel workbook contains only one format entry for the worksheet. Although the nine format entries created by the previous set of `putexcel` commands are unlikely to cause a problem, your Excel workbook will become large if you format hundreds of cells across multiple worksheets in this manner. Regardless of the number of cells you are formatting, you should always try to write cell formats efficiently to reduce your Excel workbook size.



## Exporting summary statistics to Excel

We can use `putexcel` to write summary statistics to an Excel worksheet. The available summary statistics are determined by [returned results](#). The returned results are documented in the *Stored results* section of the command's manual entry or help. You can also see what is returned by typing `return list` or `ereturn list`.

### ► Example 4: Export selected statistics

To export a specific statistic, we use the expression output type. For example, we might want a table that has the number of observations for men and women followed by means for each variable, which we show in [example 5](#).

We can obtain counts many ways in Stata. Here we use the `summarize` command and restrict the command to males (`female==0`). We use `visits`, but any continuous variable without missing values would have worked just as well. `r(N)` stores the number of observations.

```
. summarize visits if female==0
```

Variable	Obs	Mean	Std. Dev.	Min	Max
visits	257	5.105058	3.893185	1	27

```
. putexcel B2 = 'r(N)'  
file myresults.xlsx saved
```

A more direct way to obtain the number of observations is with the `count` command.

```
. count if female==1  
243  
  
. putexcel C2 = 'r(N)'  
file myresults.xlsx saved
```

Notice that we typed `'r(N)'` instead of `"r(N)"`. The `'` tell Stata to fill in the numeric value associated with `r(N)` instead of exporting the text, known as macro substitution; see [\[P\] macro](#). If we wanted to treat the contents of `r(N)`, or any other return value, like a string, we could have typed `"'r(N)'"`.



### ► Example 5: Export frequency tables

You can use `putexcel` in Stata to create tables in Excel by using the `matrix()` output type. Suppose we want to create a table of means for each variable for each value of `female`. We can use `tabstat` with the `save` option and then check the return values with `return list` to determine what values to output.

```
. tabstat visits ad time phone frfam, by(female) save
Summary statistics: mean
by categories of: female (Female)
```

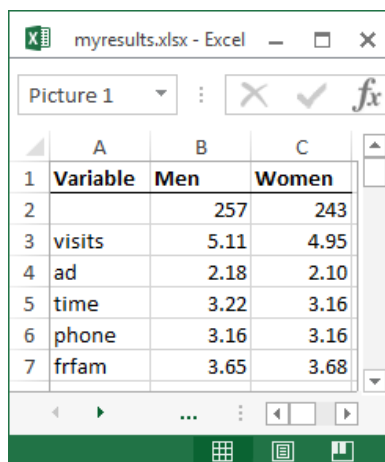
female	visits	ad	time	phone	frfam
0	5.105058	2.175097	3.222412	3.164086	3.65428
1	4.946502	2.098765	3.161276	3.155391	3.676708
Total	5.028	2.138	3.1927	3.15986	3.66518

```
. return list
macros:
      r(name2) : "1"
      r(name1) : "0"
matrices:
      r(Stat2) : 1 x 5
      r(Stat1) : 1 x 5
      r(StatTotal) : 1 x 5
```

First, we transpose the row vectors `r(Stat1)` and `r(Stat2)`, which contain the means, so that the values are written in a column under each heading. We want the variable names to be included, so for males, which is the first matrix we output, we include the `rownames` option. Because we want the values in B3 and the row names of the matrix in A3, we specify A3. We use `nformat(number_d2)` to format the means with two decimal places. For females, we do not need to specify the names again, so we just specify the cell where we want the data to be written.

```
. matrix male = r(Stat1)'
. matrix female = r(Stat2)'
. putexcel A3 = matrix(male), rownames nformat(number_d2)
file myresults.xlsx saved
. putexcel C3 = matrix(female), nformat(number_d2)
file myresults.xlsx saved
```

The above commands give a final table of frequencies and means that looks like this:



	A	B	C
1	Variable	Men	Women
2		257	243
3	visits	5.11	4.95
4	ad	2.18	2.10
5	time	3.22	3.16
6	phone	3.16	3.16
7	frfam	3.65	3.68

◀

## Export estimation results

A similar approach to that used in [example 5](#) can be used to export estimation results. Suppose we want to fit a linear regression model of `visits` as a function of `ad`, `female`, and `time` using `regress` and we want to export formatted results.

```
. regress visits ad female time
```

Source	SS	df	MS	Number of obs = 500		
Model	5710.6792	3	1903.55973	F(3, 496)	=	346.75
Residual	2722.9288	496	5.4897758	Prob > F	=	0.0000
				R-squared	=	0.6771
				Adj R-squared	=	0.6752
Total	8433.608	499	16.901018	Root MSE	=	2.343

visits	Coef.	Std. Err.	t	P> t	[95% Conf. Interval]	
ad	.7996179	.0516591	15.48	0.000	.6981203	.9011156
female	-.0467997	.2096816	-0.22	0.823	-.4587734	.3651739
time	.82962	.0436601	19.00	0.000	.7438385	.9154014
_cons	.6924339	.2007914	3.45	0.001	.2979273	1.086941

### ► Example 6: Export point estimates and sample size

We start by using `putexcel` `set` again to create a new worksheet for our regression results. Because we are working with the same workbook that we specified previously, we specify the `modify` option.

```
. putexcel set myresults.xlsx, sheet(Estimation) modify
```

We want to give our coefficients the title “Coef.” in the table we create, so we use an expression to write this to cell B1. We create a new matrix for our coefficients as the transpose of the values of e-class matrix `e(b)`. We use column A row 2 as the starting location for the matrix row labels, and we use column B row 2 as the starting location for the coefficients; to do this, we only need to specify the upper-left cell (A2) and the `rownames` option. To make our table more readable, we format the coefficient estimates with two decimal places by using `nformat()` and add a bottom border under the estimates.

```
. putexcel B1 = "Coef."  
file myresults.xlsx saved  
  
. matrix b = e(b)'  
  
. putexcel A2 = matrix(b), rownames nformat(number_d2)  
file myresults.xlsx saved  
  
. putexcel A5:B5, border(bottom)  
file myresults.xlsx saved
```

We then add a right-aligned and italicized “N=” in column A row 6 and the sample size from e-class scalar `e(N)` in column B row 6. We use a medium border under this row instead of the default thin border to indicate that the table is complete.

```
. putexcel A6 = "N=", italic right border(bottom, medium)  
file myresults.xlsx saved  
  
. putexcel B6 = matrix(e(N)), nformat(number_sep) border(bottom, medium)  
file myresults.xlsx saved
```

The above commands create a table that looks like this:

	A	B	C
1		Coef.	
2	ad	0.80	
3	female	-0.05	
4	time	0.83	
5	_cons	0.69	
6	N=	500	
7			

If you are going to export more-complex tables or many objects, you should use the advanced syntax of `putexcel`; see [RPT] [putexcel advanced](#).



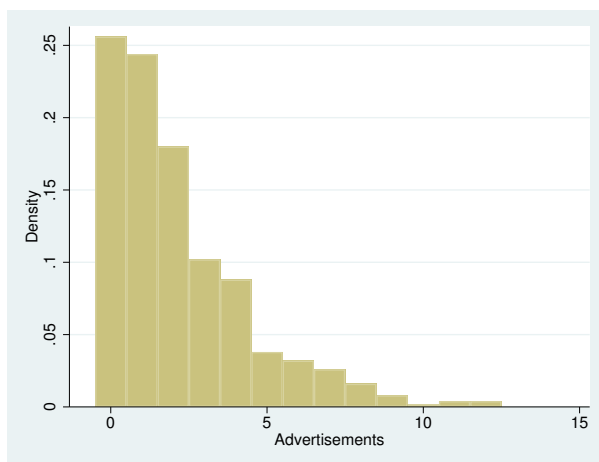
## Export graphs and other images

You can export PNG, JPEG, and other image formats to Excel with `putexcel`. To export a Stata graph, you must first use `graph export` to convert the Stata graph to one of the supported image formats.

### ► Example 7: Export Stata graph

We may want to add a histogram about the number of advertisements viewed to our set of descriptive results. We can use the `histogram` command and then `graph export` to create a PNG file of our histogram.

```
. histogram ad, discrete
(start=0, width=1)
. graph export ads.png
(file ads.png written in PNG format)
```



Next we use `putexcel set` to switch back to the Excel sheet named `Descriptive`, and then we output the graph to Excel with the `image()` output type. Again, because we are working with the same workbook, we specify the `modify` option.

```
. putexcel set myresults.xlsx, sheet(Descriptive) modify
. putexcel E2 = image(ads.png)
file myresults.xlsx saved
```

This adds the graph with the upper-left corner of the graph aligned in the upper-left corner of cell E2. Graphs are not resized by `putexcel`, but you can change the size with the `graph export` command; see [G-2] `graph export`.

◀

### □ Technical note

See the technical notes [Excel data size limits](#) and [Dates and times](#) in [D] `import excel`.

□

# Appendix

## Codes for numeric formats

Code	Example
number	1000
number_d2	1000.00
number_sep	100,000
number_sep_d2	100,000.00
number_sep_negbra	(1,000)
number_sep_negbrared	(1,000)
number_d2_sep_negbra	(1,000.00)
number_d2_sep_negbrared	(1,000.00)
currency_negbra	(\$4000)
currency_negbrared	(\$4000)
currency_d2_negbra	(\$4000.00)
currency_d2_negbrared	(\$4000.00)
account	5,000
accountcur	\$ 5,000
account_d2	5,000.00
account_d2_cur	\$ 5,000.00
percent	75%
percent_d2	75.00%
scientific_d2	10.00E+1
fraction_onedig	10 1/2
fraction_twodig	10 23/95
date	3/18/2007
date_d_mon_yy	18-Mar-07
date_d_mon	18-Mar
date_mon_yy	Mar-07
time_hmm_AM	8:30 AM
time_HMMSS_AM	8:30:00 AM
time_HMM	8:30
time_HMMSS	8:30:00
time_MMSS	30:55
time_HOMMSS	20:30:55
time_MMSSO	30:55.0
date_time	3/18/2007 8:30
text	this is text

## Colors

*color*


---

aliceblue	deeppink
antiquewhite	deepskyblue
aqua	dimgray
aquamarine	dodgerblue
azure	firebrick
beige	floralwhite
bisque	forestgreen
black	fuchsia
blanchedalmond	gainsboro
blue	ghostwhite
blueviolet	gold
brown	goldenrod
burlywood	gray
cadetblue	green
chartreuse	greenyellow
chocolate	honeydew
coral	hotpink
cornflowerblue	indianred
cornsilk	indigo
crimson	ivory
cyan	khaki
darkblue	lavender
darkcyan	lavenderblush
darkgoldenrod	lawngreen
darkgray	lemonchiffon
darkgreen	lightblue
darkkhaki	lightcoral
darkmagenta	lightcyan
darkolivegreen	lightgoldenrodyellow
darkorange	lightgray
darkorchid	lightgreen
darkred	lightpink
darksalmon	lightsalmon
darkseagreen	lightseagreen
darkslateblue	lightskyblue
darkslategray	lightslategray
darkturquoise	lightsteelblue
darkviolet	lightyellow

*color*, continued

lime	peru
limegreen	pink
linen	plum
magenta	powerblue
maroon	purple
mediumaquamarine	red
mediumblue	rosybrown
mediumorchid	royalblue
mediumpurple	saddlebrown
mediumseagreen	salmon
mediumslateblue	sandybrown
mediumspringgreen	seagreen
mediumturquoise	seashell
mediumvioletred	sienna
midnightblue	silver
mintcream	skyblue
mistyrose	slateblue
moccasin	snow
navajowhite	springgreen
navy	steelblue
oldlace	tan
olive	teal
olivedrab	thistle
orange	tomato
orangered	turquoise
orchid	violet
palegoldenrod	wheat
palegreen	white
paleturquoise	whitesmoke
palevioletred	yellow
papayawhip	yellowgreen
peachpuff	

---

## Border styles

*style*

---

none  
 thin  
 medium  
 dashed  
 dotted  
 thick  
 double  
 hair  
 medium\_dashed  
 dash\_dot  
 medium\_dash\_dot  
 dash\_dot\_dot  
 medium\_dash\_dot\_dot  
 slant\_dash\_dot

---

## Background patterns

*pattern*

---

none  
 solid  
 gray50  
 gray75  
 gray25  
 horstripe  
 verstripe  
 diagstripe  
 revdiagstripe  
 diagcrosshatch  
 thinhorstripe  
 thinverstripe  
 thindia stripe  
 thinrevdiagstripe  
 thinhorcrosshatch  
 thindia crosshatch  
 thickdiagcrosshatch  
 gray12p5  
 gray6p25

---

## References

- Crow, K. 2013. Export tables to Excel. *The Stata Blog: Not Elsewhere Classified*. <http://blog.stata.com/2013/09/25/export-tables-to-excel/>.
- . 2014. Retaining an Excel cell's format when using putexcel. *The Stata Blog: Not Elsewhere Classified*. <http://blog.stata.com/2014/02/04/retaining-an-excel-cells-format-when-using-putexcel/>.
- . 2018. Export tabulation results to Excel—Update. *The Stata Blog: Not Elsewhere Classified*. <https://blog.stata.com/2018/06/07/export-tabulation-results-to-excel-update/>.
- Gallup, J. L. 2012. A new system for formatting estimation tables. *Stata Journal* 12: 3–28.
- Huber, C. 2017a. Creating Excel tables with putexcel, part 1: Introduction and formatting. *The Stata Blog: Not Elsewhere Classified*. <http://blog.stata.com/2017/01/10/creating-excel-tables-with-putexcel-part-1-introduction-and-formatting/>.
- . 2017b. Creating Excel tables with putexcel, part 2: Macro, picture, matrix, and formula expressions. *The Stata Blog: Not Elsewhere Classified*. <http://blog.stata.com/2017/01/24/creating-excel-tables-with-putexcel-part-2-macro-picture-matrix-and-formula-expressions/>.
- Quintó, L. 2012. HTML output in Stata. *Stata Journal* 12: 702–717.

## Also see

- [RPT] **putexcel advanced** — Export results to an Excel file using advanced syntax
- [RPT] **putdocx intro** — Introduction to generating Office Open XML (.docx) files
- [RPT] **putpdf intro** — Introduction to generating PDF files
- [D] **import excel** — Import and export Excel files
- [M-5] **\_docx\*()** — Generate Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [M-5] **Pdf\*()** — Create a PDF file
- [M-5] **xl()** — Excel file I/O class

<a href="#">Description</a>	<a href="#">Quick start</a>	<a href="#">Menu</a>	<a href="#">Syntax</a>
<a href="#">Options</a>	<a href="#">Remarks and examples</a>	<a href="#">References</a>	<a href="#">Also see</a>

## Description

`putexcel` with the advanced syntax may be used to simultaneously write Stata [expressions](#), [matrices](#), images, and [stored results](#) to an Excel file. It may also be used to format existing contents of cells in a worksheet. This syntax is intended for use by programmers of commands that call `putexcel` in the background and by other advanced users. Excel 1997/2003 (`.xls`) files and Excel 2007/2010 and newer (`.xlsx`) files are supported. A simplified version of the syntax is documented in [\[RPT\] putexcel](#).

`putexcel set` sets the Excel file to create, modify, or replace in subsequent `putexcel` commands. You must set the destination file before using any other `putexcel` commands. `putexcel save` closes a file opened using the command `putexcel set ...`, open and saves the file in memory to disk. `putexcel clear` clears the file information set by `putexcel set`. `putexcel describe` displays the file information set by `putexcel set`.

## Quick start

Declare the first sheet of `myresults.xlsx` to be the destination workbook for subsequent `putexcel` commands

```
putexcel set myresults
```

As above, but use a sheet named Estimation Results and replace that sheet if it exists

```
putexcel set myresults, sheet("Estimation Results", replace)
```

Write estimation results in `e(b)` to column B, starting in row 2, with the results formatted to have two decimal places, matrix row names in column A, and the title “Coefs.” in cell B1

```
matrix b=e(b)'  
putexcel B1="Coefs." A2=matrix(b), rownames nformat(number_d2)
```

Add a thin border under cells A1 to B1 and italicize the text

```
putexcel (A1:B1), border(bottom) italic
```

Write “Some text that is too long to fit” to cell D1 and set the text to wrap within the cell

```
putexcel D1="Some text that is too long to fit", txtwrap
```

Merge D1 with D2, E1, and E2, and horizontally and vertically center

```
putexcel (D1:E2), merge hcenter vcenter
```

## Menu

File > Export > Results to Excel spreadsheet (\*.xls;\*.xlsx)

## Syntax

*Set workbook for export*

```
putexcel set filename [ , set_options ]
```

*Specify formatting and output*

```
putexcel spec1 [spec2 [...] ] [ , export_options format_options ]
```

*Close and save current Excel file*

```
putexcel save
```

*Describe current export settings*

```
putexcel describe
```

*Clear current export settings*

```
putexcel clear
```

*spec* may be *ul\_cell* or *cellrange* of the form *ul\_cell*:*lr\_cell* if no output is to be written or may be one of the following **output types**:

*ul\_cell* = *exp*

*ul\_cell*:*lr\_cell* = *exp*

*ul\_cell* = `matrix(matname)`

*ul\_cell* = `image(filename)`

*ul\_cell* = `returnset`

*ul\_cell* = `formula(formula)`

*ul\_cell* = `etable[ (#1 #2 ... #n) ]`

*ul\_cell* is a valid Excel upper-left cell specified using standard Excel notation, and *lr\_cell* is a valid Excel lower-right cell. If you specify *ul\_cell* as the output location multiple times, the rightmost specification is the one written to the Excel file.



<i>set_options</i>	Description
<code>open</code>	open Excel file in memory
<code>modify</code>	modify Excel file
<code>replace</code>	overwrite Excel file
<code>sheet(sheetname[, replace])</code>	specify the worksheet to use; the default sheet name is <code>Sheet1</code>

<i>export_options</i>	Description
Main	
<code>overwritefmt</code>	overwrite existing cell formatting when exporting new content
<code>asdate</code>	convert Stata date (%td-formatted) <i>exp</i> to an Excel date
<code>asdatetime</code>	convert Stata datetime (%tc-formatted) <i>exp</i> to an Excel datetime
<code>asdatenum</code>	convert Stata date <i>exp</i> to an Excel date number, preserving the cell's format
<code>asdatetimenum</code>	convert Stata datetime <i>exp</i> to an Excel datetime number, preserving the cell's format
<code>names</code>	also write row names and column names for matrix <i>name</i> ; may not be combined with <code>rownames</code> or <code>colnames</code>
<code>rownames</code>	also write matrix row names for matrix <i>name</i> ; may not be combined with <code>names</code> or <code>colnames</code>
<code>colnames</code>	also write matrix column names for matrix <i>name</i> ; may not be combined with <code>names</code> or <code>rownames</code>
<code>colwise</code>	write results in <i>returnset</i> to consecutive columns instead of rows

<i>format_options</i>	Description
Number	
<u>nformat</u> ( <i>excelnfmt</i> )	specify format for numbers
Alignment	
<u>left</u>	left-align text
<u>hcenter</u>	center text horizontally
<u>right</u>	right-align text
<u>top</u>	vertically align text with the top
<u>vcenter</u>	center text vertically
<u>bottom</u>	vertically align text with the bottom
<u>txtindent</u> (#)	indent text by # spaces; default is 0
<u>txtrotate</u> (#)	rotate text by # degrees; default is 0
[no] <u>txtwrap</u>	wrap text within each cell
[no] <u>shrinkfit</u>	shrink text to fit the cell width
<u>merge</u>	merge cells in <i>cellrange</i>
<u>unmerge</u>	separate merged cells identified by <i>ul_cell</i>
Font	
<u>font</u> ( <i>fontname</i> [, <i>size</i> [, <i>color</i> ]])	specify font, font size, and font color
[no] <u>italic</u>	format text as italic
[no] <u>bold</u>	format text as bold
[no] <u>underline</u>	underline text in the specified cells
[no] <u>strikeout</u>	strikeout text in the specified cells
<u>script</u> (sub   super   none)	specify subscript or superscript formatting
Border	
<u>border</u> ( <i>border</i> [, <i>style</i> [, <i>color</i> ]])	specify horizontal and vertical cell border style
<u>dborder</u> ( <i>direction</i> [, <i>style</i> [, <i>color</i> ]])	specify diagonal cell border style
Fill	
<u>fpattern</u> ( <i>pattern</i> [, <i>fgcolor</i> [, <i>bgcolor</i> ]])	specify fill pattern for cells

Output types

*exp* writes a valid Stata expression to a cell; see [U] **13 Functions and expressions**. Stata dates and datetimes differ from Excel dates and datetimes. To properly export date and datetime values, use *asdate* and *asdatetime*.

*matrix*(*matname*) writes the values from a Stata matrix to Excel. Stata determines where to place the data in Excel by default from the size of the matrix (the number of rows and columns) and the location you specified in *ul\_cell*. By default, *ul\_cell* contains the first element of *matname*, and matrix row names and column names are not written.

*image*(*filename*) writes a portable network graphics (.png), JPEG (.jpg), Windows metafile (.wmf), device-independent bitmap (.dib), enhanced metafile (.emf), or bitmap (.bmp) file to an Excel worksheet. The upper-left corner of the image is aligned with the upper-left corner of the specified *ul\_cell*. The image is not resized. If *filename* contains spaces, it must be enclosed in double quotes.

*returnset* is a shortcut name that is used to identify a group of [return](#) values. *returnset* may be any one of the following:

<i>returnset</i>	
<u>escalars</u>	<u>escalarnames</u>
<u>rscalars</u>	<u>rscalarnames</u>
<u>emacros</u>	<u>emacronames</u>
<u>rmacros</u>	<u>rmacronames</u>
<u>ematrices</u>	<u>ematrixnames</u>
<u>rmatrices</u>	<u>rmatrixnames</u>
<u>e*</u>	<u>enames</u>
<u>r*</u>	<u>rnames</u>

`formula(formula)` writes an Excel formula to the cell specified in *ul\_cell*. *formula* may be any valid Excel formula. Stata does not validate formulas; the text is passed literally to Excel.

`etable[(#1 #2 ... #n)]` adds an automatically generated table to an Excel file starting in *ul\_cell*. The table may be derived from the coefficient table of the last estimation command, from the table of margins after the last [margins](#) command, or from the table of results from one or more models displayed by [estimates table](#).

If the estimation command outputs  $n > 1$  coefficient tables, the default is to add all tables and assign the corresponding table names *tablename1*, *tablename2*, ..., *tablename<sub>n</sub>*. To specify which tables to add, supply the optional numlist to `etable`. For example, to add only the first and third tables from the estimation output, specify `etable(1 3)`. A few estimation commands do not support the `etable` output type. See [Unsupported estimation commands](#) in [RPT] [Appendix for putdocx](#) for a list of estimation commands that are not supported by `putexcel`.

## Options

### Set

`open` permits `putexcel set` to open the Excel file in memory for modification. The Excel file is written to disk when `putexcel save` is issued.

`modify` permits `putexcel set` to modify an Excel file.

`replace` permits `putexcel set` to overwrite an existing Excel workbook. The workbook is overwritten when the first `putexcel` command is issued unless the `open` option is used.

`sheet(sheetname [, replace])` saves to the worksheet named *sheetname*. If there is no worksheet named *sheetname* in the workbook, then a new sheet named *sheetname* is created. If this option is not specified, `Sheet1` is used.

`replace` permits `putexcel set` to overwrite *sheetname* if it exists in the specified *filename*.

### Main

`overwritefmt` causes `putexcel` to remove any existing cell formatting in the cell or cells to which it is writing new output. By default, all existing cell formatting is preserved. `overwritefmt`, when combined with a cell range, writes the cell format more efficiently.

`asdate` tells `putexcel` that the specified *exp* is a Stata `%td`-formatted date that should be converted to an Excel date with *m/d/yyyy* Excel date format.

This option has no effect if an *exp* is not specified as one of the output types.

`asdatetime` tells `putexcel` that the specified *exp* is a Stata `%tc`-formatted datetime that should be converted to an Excel datetime with `m/d/yyyy h:mm` Excel datetime format.

This option has no effect if an *exp* is not specified as one of the output types.

`asdatetimeum` tells `putexcel` that the specified *exp* is a Stata `%td`-formatted date that should be converted to an Excel date number, preserving the cell's format.

This option has no effect if an *exp* is not specified as one of the output types.

`asdatetimeum` tells `putexcel` that the specified *exp* is a Stata `%tc`-formatted datetime that should be converted to an Excel datetime number, preserving the cell's format.

This option has no effect if an *exp* is not specified as one of the output types.

`names` specifies that matrix row names and column names be written into the Excel worksheet along with the matrix values. If you specify `names`, then `ul_cell` will be blank, the cell to the right of it will contain the name of the first column, and the cell below it will contain the name of the first row. `names` may not be specified with `rownames` or `colnames`.

This option has no effect if `matrix()` is not specified as one of the output types.

`rownames` specifies that matrix row names be written into the Excel worksheet along with the matrix values. If you specify `rownames`, then `ul_cell` will contain the name of the first row. `rownames` may not be specified with `names` or `colnames`.

This option has no effect if `matrix()` is not specified as one of the output types.

`colnames` specifies that matrix column names be written into the Excel worksheet along with the matrix values. If you specify `colnames`, then `ul_cell` will contain the name of the first column. `colnames` may not be specified with `names` or `rownames`.

This option has no effect if `matrix()` is not specified as one of the output types.

`colwise` specifies that if a *returnset* is used, the values written to the Excel worksheet be written in consecutive columns. By default, the values are written in consecutive rows.

This option has no effect if a *returnset* is not specified as one of the output types.

## Number

**nformat**(*excelfmt*) changes the numeric format of a cell range. Codes for commonly used formats are shown in the table of numeric formats in the [Appendix](#). However, any valid Excel format is permitted. Formats are formed from combinations of the following symbols.

Symbol	Description	Cell value	Fmt code	Cell displays
0	Digit placeholder (add zeros)	8.9	#.00	8.90
#	Digit placeholder (no zeros)	8.9	#.##	8.9
?	Digit placeholder (add space)	8.9	0.0?	8.9
.	Decimal point			
%	Percentage	.1	%	10%
,	Thousands separator	10000	#,###	10,000
E- E+ e- e+	Scientific format	12200000	0.00E+00	1.22E+07
\$-+/( ):space	Display the symbol	12	(000)	(012)
\	Escape character	3	0\!	3!
*	Repeat character (fill in cell width)	3	3*	3xxxxx
—	Skip width of next character	—1.2	_0.0	1.2
"text"	Display text in quotes	1.23	0.00 "a"	1.23 a
@	Text placeholder	b	"a"@c"	abc

Formats that contain spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

## Alignment

**left** sets the specified cells to have contents left-aligned within the cell. **left** may not be combined with **right** or **hcenter**. Right-alignment is the Excel default for numeric values and need not be specified when outputting numbers.

**hcenter** sets the specified cells to have contents horizontally centered within the cell. **hcenter** may not be combined with **left** or **right**.

**right** sets the specified cells to have contents right-aligned within the cell. **right** may not be combined with **left** or **hcenter**. Left-alignment is the Excel default for text and need not be specified when outputting strings.

**top** sets the specified cells to have contents vertically aligned with the top of the cell. **top** may not be combined with **bottom** or **vcenter**.

**vcenter** sets the specified cells to have contents vertically aligned with the center of the cell. **vcenter** may not be combined with **top** or **bottom**.

**bottom** sets the specified cells to have contents vertically aligned with the bottom of the cell. **bottom** may not be combined with **top** or **vcenter**.

**txtindent**(#) sets the text indentation in each cell in a cell range. # must be an integer between 0 and 15.

**txtrotate**(#) sets the text rotation in each cell in a cell range. # must be an integer between 0 and 180 or equal to 255. **txtrotate**(0) is equal to no rotation and is the default. **txtrotate**(255) specifies vertical text. Values 1–90 rotate the text counterclockwise 1 to 90 degrees. Values 91–180 rotate the text clockwise 1 to 90 degrees.

`txtwrap` and `nottxtwrap` specify whether the text is to be wrapped in a cell or within each cell in a range of cells. The default is no wrapping. `nottxtwrap` has an effect only if the cell or cells were previously formatted to wrap. `txtwrap` may not be specified with `shrinkfit`.

`shrinkfit` and `noshrinkfit` specify whether the text is to be shrunk to fit in the cell width of a cell or in each cell of a range of cells. The default is no shrinking. `noshrinkfit` has an effect only if the cell or cells were previously formatted to shrink text to fit. `shrinkfit` may not be specified with `txtwrap`.

`merge` tells Excel to merge cells in the specified cell range. `merge` may be combined with `left`, `right`, `hcenter`, `top`, `bottom`, and `vcenter` to format the merged cell. Merging cells that contain data in each cell will result in the upper-leftmost data being kept.

Once you have merged cells, you can refer to the merged cell by using any single cell from the specified *cellrange*. For example, if you specified a *cellrange* of A1:B2, you could refer to the merged cell using A1, B1, A2, or B2.

`unmerge` tells Excel to unmerge previously merged cells. When using `unmerge`, you only need to use a single cell from the merged cell in the previously specified *cellrange*.

#### Font

`font(fontname [ , size [ , color ] ])` sets the font, font size, and font color for each cell in a cell range. If `font()` is not specified, the Excel defaults are preserved.

*fontname* may be any valid Excel font. If *fontname* includes spaces, then it must be enclosed in double quotes. What constitutes a valid Excel font is determined by the version of Excel that is installed on the user's computer.

*size* is a numeric value that represents any valid Excel font size. The default is 12.

*color* may be a valid RGB value in the form "### ##" or may be one of the colors listed in the table of colors in the [Appendix in \[RPT\] putexcel](#). If no *color* is specified, then Excel workbook defaults are used.

`italic` and `noitalic` specify whether to italicize or unitalicize the text in a cell or range of cells. The default is for text to be unitalicized. `noitalic` has an effect only if the cell or cells were previously italicized.

`bold` and `nobold` specify whether to bold or unbold the text in a cell or range of cells. The default is for text to be unbold. `nobold` has an effect only if the cell or cells were previously formatted as bold.

`underline` and `nounderline` specify whether to underline the text or remove the underline from the text in a cell or range of cells. The default is for text not to be underlined. `nounderline` has an effect only if the cell or cells previously contained underlined text.

`strikeout` and `nostrikeout` specify whether to strikeout the text or remove the strikeout from the text in a cell or range of cells. The default is for text not to have a strikeout mark. `nostrikeout` has an effect only if the cell or cells previously had a strikeout mark.

`script(sub|super|none)` changes the script style of the cell. `script(sub)` makes all text in a cell or range of cells a subscript. `script(super)` makes all text in a cell or range of cells a superscript. `script(none)` removes all subscript or superscript formatting from a cell or range of cells. Specifying `script(none)` has an effect only if the cell or cells were previously formatted as subscript or superscript.

## Border

**border**(*border* [ , *style* [ , *color* ] ]) sets the cell border, style, and color for a cell or range of cells.

*border* may be **all**, **left**, **right**, **top**, or **bottom**.

*style* is a keyword specifying the look of the border. The most common styles are **thin**, **medium**, **thick**, and **double**. The default is **thin**. For a complete list of border styles, see the [Appendix in \[RPT\] putexcel](#). To remove an existing border, specify **none** as the *style*.

*color* may be a valid RGB value in the form "**### ### ###**" or may be one of the colors listed in the table of colors in the [Appendix in \[RPT\] putexcel](#). If no *color* is specified, then Excel workbook defaults are used.

**dborder**(*direction* [ , *style* [ , *color* ] ]) sets the cell diagonal border direction, style, and color for a cell or range of cells.

*direction* may be **down**, **up**, or **both**. **down** draws a line from the upper-left corner of the cell to the lower-right corner of the cell or, for a range of cells, from the upper-left corner of *ul\_cell* to the lower-right corner of *lr\_cell*. **up** draws a line from the lower-left corner of the cell to the upper-right corner of the cell or, for a range of cells, from the lower-left corner of the area defined by *ul\_cell*:*lr\_cell* to the upper-right corner.

*style* is a keyword specifying the look of the border. The most common styles are **thin**, **medium**, **thick**, and **double**. The default is **thin**. For a complete list of border styles, see the [Appendix in \[RPT\] putexcel](#). To remove an existing border, specify **none** as the *style*.

*color* may be a valid RGB value in the form "**### ### ###**" or may be one of the colors listed in the table of colors in the [Appendix in \[RPT\] putexcel](#). If no *color* is specified, then Excel workbook defaults are used.

## Fill

**fpattern**(*pattern* [ , *fgcolor* [ , *bgcolor* ] ]) sets the fill pattern, foreground color, and background color for a cell or range of cells.

*pattern* is a keyword specifying the fill pattern. The most common fill patterns are **solid** for a solid color (determined by *fgcolor*), **gray25** for 25% gray scale, **gray50** for 50% gray scale, and **gray75** for 75% gray scale. A complete list of fill patterns is shown in the [Appendix of \[RPT\] putexcel](#). To remove an existing fill pattern from the cell or cells, specify **none** as the *pattern*.

*fgcolor* specifies the foreground color. The default foreground color is **black**. *fgcolor* may be a valid RGB value in the form "**### ### ###**" or may be any of the colors listed in the table of colors in the [Appendix in \[RPT\] putexcel](#).

*bgcolor* specifies the background color. *bgcolor* may be a valid RGB value in the form "**### ### ###**" or may be any of the colors listed in the table of colors in the [Appendix in \[RPT\] putexcel](#). If no *bgcolor* is specified, then Excel workbook defaults are used.

## Remarks and examples

If you have not already read [Remarks and examples in \[RPT\] putexcel](#), please do so now. The examples here build on the examples shown there.

Remarks are presented under the following headings:

[Writing expressions and formatting cells](#)  
[Using formulas](#)  
[Exporting estimation results](#)

## Writing expressions and formatting cells

Before we can write to an Excel workbook using `putexcel`, we need to tell Stata what the destination is. We do this using the `putexcel set` command. For the next several examples, we will use an Excel file named `myresults2.xlsx`. We will begin with a sheet named `Descriptive`.

```
. putexcel set myresults2.xlsx, sheet(Descriptive)
```

If we had not specified the sheet name, `putexcel` would have defaulted to using the first sheet in the workbook.

### ➤ Example 1: Write multiple expressions and format cells simultaneously

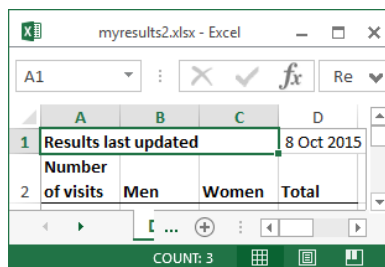
Suppose we want to write the same headers and format them as shown in [example 2](#) and [example 3](#) of [\[RPT\] putexcel](#). Using the advanced syntax of `putexcel`, we can do this with a single `putexcel` command.

```
. putexcel A1="Variable" B1="Men" C1="Women", bold border(bottom)
file myresults2.xlsx saved
```

Rather than beginning with the table headers, we could improve record keeping by including the date we generated the results. To do this, we can use the system parameter, or c-class return value, `c(current_date)`, which will add a string date in the format *dd Mon yyyy*; see [\[P\] creturn](#). We also merge cells A1 and B1 for aesthetic reasons. Notice that we type `"'c(current_date)'"` instead of `"c(current_date)"`. The `'` indicate macro substitution; see [\[P\] macro](#). We specify `replace` as a suboption to `sheet()` in a new `putexcel set` command to overwrite our previous output. Because the workbook `myresults2.xlsx` already exists, we also need to `replace`, or `modify`, the workbook.

```
. putexcel set myresults2.xlsx, replace sheet(Descriptive, replace)
Note: file will be replaced when the first putexcel command is issued
. putexcel A1 = "Results last updated" D1 = "'c(current_date)'"
file myresults2.xlsx saved
. putexcel (A1:C1), merge
file myresults2.xlsx saved
. putexcel A2="Variable" B2="Men" C2="Women", bold border(bottom)
file myresults2.xlsx saved
```

The above commands give an Excel file with a header row that looks like this:



	A	B	C	D
1	Results last updated			8 Oct 2015
2	Number of visits	Men	Women	Total



## Using formulas

Writing Excel formulas is useful when you want to perform calculations using the output of Stata commands. Formulas are passed verbatim to Excel, so you must use the correct Excel function (not Stata function) for what you want to accomplish. You may find it helpful to experiment in Excel first and then copy the formula over to your [do-file](#) to keep a record of your work and in case you need to run your analysis again later.

### ► Example 2: Adding a total row and total column

In [example 4](#) of [\[RPT\] putexcel](#), we obtained the number of females and number of males in the `website` dataset and wrote these out to Excel. Suppose instead that we want the number of males and females at each number of visits and the total number of visits.

We can change the heading for the first column from “Variable” to “Number of visits” and add a column for “Total”. We specify the `txtwrap` option with our `putexcel` command so that the long text “Number of visits” wraps within cell A2.

We use the `matcell()` option with `tabulate` to save the cell frequencies to a matrix and the `matrow()` option to save the row values from the table.

```
. use https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/website
(Visits to website)

. putexcel A2="Number of visits" D2="Total", txtwrap bold border(bottom)
file myresults2.xlsx saved

. tabulate visits female, matrow(nvisits) matcell(freq)
```

Visits to website	Female		Total
	0	1	
1	18	17	35
2	58	42	100
3	32	46	78
4	35	25	60
5	24	40	64
6	21	17	38
7	21	21	42
8	12	7	19
9	8	10	18
10	8	5	13
11	3	5	8
12	4	1	5
13	2	2	4
14	4	0	4
15	1	1	2
16	1	1	2
18	1	0	1
20	2	1	3
22	1	0	1
23	0	1	1
27	1	0	1
51	0	1	1
Total	257	243	500

```
. putexcel A3=matrix(nvisits) B3=matrix(freq)
file myresults2.xlsx saved
```

Totals, however, are not saved. By using formulas in Excel, we can add the row and column totals. Our results will begin on row 3, so we will want to begin calculating row totals here. For example,

in Excel the row total for males (column B) and females (column C) in row 3 is  $D3=B3+C3$ . The fastest way to write this formula multiple times for each row is to use `forvalues`; see [P] [forvalues](#).

```
. forvalues i=3/24 {
  2.   putexcel D`i'=formula(B`i'+C`i')
  3. }
file myresults2.xlsx saved
(output omitted)
```

We also want column totals. For this, it is easier to use Excel's `SUM()` function. We supply this as the `formula()` output type and add a border above the total row to set it apart from the rest of the table.

```
. putexcel A25="Total" B25=formula(SUM(B3:B24)) C25=formula(SUM(C3:C24))
> D25=formula(SUM(D3:D24)), bold border(top)
file myresults2.xlsx saved
```

◀

## Exporting estimation results

We start by using `putexcel set` again to create a new worksheet for our regression results, modifying our existing workbook.

```
. putexcel set myresults2.xlsx, sheet(Estimation) modify
```

### ► Example 3: Export point estimates and formatted confidence intervals

We continue from [example 6](#) of [RPT] [putexcel](#), where we gave the coefficients the title “Coef.”. Here we add a column named “C.I.” for the confidence interval, which we center in cells C1 and D1.

```
. putexcel B1="Coef." C1="C.I."
file myresults2.xlsx saved

. putexcel (C1:D1), merge hcenter
file myresults2.xlsx saved
```

We fit the same model that we did in [example 6](#) of [RPT] [putexcel](#). We copy the `r-class` return `r(table)`, which contains the values that were returned by the command in the estimation results table, into a new matrix named `table`.

```
. quietly regress visits ad female time
. matrix table = r(table)
. matrix list table
table[9,4]
      ad      female      time      _cons
b      .79961794   -.04679974   .82961995   .69243389
se      .05165911   .2096816   .04366007   .20079144
t      15.47874   -.22319432  19.001801   3.448523
pvalue  2.235e-44   .82347616   6.794e-61   .00061166
ll      .69812028   -.45877341   .74383847   .29792725
ul      .90111561   .36517393   .91540143   1.0869405
df           496           496           496           496
crit    1.9647583   1.9647583   1.9647583   1.9647583
eform           0           0           0           0
```

We then select row 1 for the coefficients (b), row 5 for the lower limit of the confidence interval (ll), and row 6 for the upper limit of the confidence interval (ul) into separate vectors. We take the transpose to ensure that our results for each variable are in a row rather than in a column when we write them out. We specify `nformat(number_d2)` for the coefficients, but we will specify a custom format for the confidence interval. We also add the `rownames` option so that the variable names are written out along with the coefficient estimates.

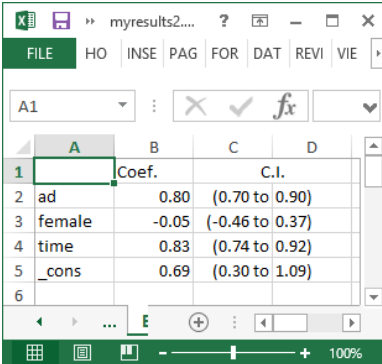
```
. matrix b = table[1, 1...]'
. matrix ll = table[5, 1...]'
. matrix ul = table[6, 1...]'
. putexcel A2=matrix(b), rownames nformat(number_d2)
file myresults2.xlsx saved
```

We want our confidence interval to be displayed as (0.74 to 0.92), taking time, for example. That is, the numbers should have a 0 before the decimal and be rounded to two decimal places. The lower and upper limits should be separated by the word “to”, and the confidence interval should be enclosed in parentheses.

We specify our format in two steps. For the lower limit, we ensure that the negative sign will display inside the parentheses by specifying separate formats for positive and negative numbers. The code for positive numbers is specified before the semicolon. The code for negative numbers is specified after the semicolon. We add the word “to” so that it is printed between the lower and upper limit values. For the upper limit, the negative sign will display in front of the number by default, so we only have to specify one format.

```
. putexcel C2=matrix(ll), nformat("(0.00 to;(-0.00 to)") right
file myresults2.xlsx saved
. putexcel D2=matrix(ul), nformat("0.00)") left
file myresults2.xlsx saved
```

The above commands give a table that looks like this:



	A	B	C	D
1		Coef.		C.I.
2	ad	0.80	(0.70 to 0.90)	
3	female	-0.05	(-0.46 to 0.37)	
4	time	0.83	(0.74 to 0.92)	
5	_cons	0.69	(0.30 to 1.09)	
6				

### ► Example 4: Export SEM estimates and path diagram

Continuing [example 3](#), suppose we also fit a corresponding linear regression model using `sem` and want to export the coefficient estimates, confidence intervals, and the path diagram. We use the same general approach as in [example 3](#) but with some modification. First, we specify the range of columns from `table` to be 1 through 4 when we create our `b`, `ll`, and `ul` vectors to exclude the variance.

```
. quietly sem (visits <- ad female time)
. matrix table = r(table)
. matrix list table
table[9,5]
```

	visits: ad	visits: female	visits: time	visits: _cons	var(e.vis~): _cons
b	.79961794	-.04679974	.82961995	.69243389	5.4458576
se	.05145206	.20884119	.04348508	.19998666	.34442628
z	15.541029	-.22409249	19.078268	3.4624004	.b
pvalue	1.830e-54	.82268533	3.827e-81	.00053538	.b
ll	.69877376	-.45612096	.74439077	.30046724	4.810958
ul	.90046212	.36252147	.91484914	1.0844005	6.1645445
df	.	.	.	.	.
crit	1.959964	1.959964	1.959964	1.959964	1.959964
eform	0	0	0	0	0

```
. matrix b = table[1, 1..4]'
. matrix ll = table[5, 1..4]'
. matrix ul = table[6, 1..4]'
```

If we wanted that term as well, we could select it separately. Because we do not need to specify row names again, we also specify the `ul_cell` for `b` in reference to its values, not the labels this time. We use the same numeric format for `ll` and `ul`.

```
. putexcel E2=matrix(b), nformat(number_d2)
file myresults2.xlsx saved
. putexcel F2=matrix(ll), nformat("(0.00 to;(-0.00 to)") right
file myresults2.xlsx saved
. putexcel G2=matrix(ul), nformat("0.00)") left
file myresults2.xlsx saved
```

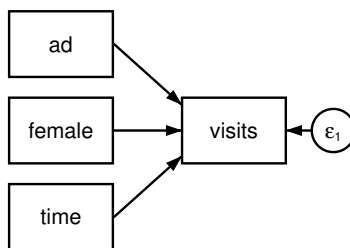
Because we are adding estimation results, we change “Coef.” to “regress” and add a column heading for “sem”. As before, we include a merged column heading for the confidence interval. We center all column headings by using the `hcenter` option.

```
. putexcel B1="regress" E1="sem" F1="C.I.", hcenter
file myresults2.xlsx saved
. putexcel (F1:G1), merge
file myresults2.xlsx saved
```

Our table from [example 3](#) now includes additional columns for our `sem` results:

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1		regress	C.I.		sem	C.I.	
2	ad	0.80	(0.70 to 0.90)		0.80	(0.70 to 0.90)	
3	female	-0.05	(-0.46 to 0.37)		-0.05	(-0.46 to 0.36)	
4	time	0.83	(0.74 to 0.92)		0.83	(0.74 to 0.91)	
5	_cons	0.69	(0.30 to 1.09)		0.69	(0.30 to 1.08)	

We might also want to export the path diagram for our model so that we can view it while looking at our results.



The SEM Builder will allow you to save your path diagram as a PNG file, in addition to other file types; PNGs can be exported to Excel. We name our path diagram `visits_sem` and save it as a PNG, and we then output the file to Excel with the `image()` output type.

```
. putexcel B6 = image(visits_sem.png)
file myresults2.xlsx saved
```

This adds the path diagram with the upper-left corner aligned in the upper-left corner of cell B6.



## □ Technical note

See the technical notes [Excel data size limits](#) and [Dates and times](#) in [D] [import excel](#).



## References

- Crow, K. 2013. Export tables to Excel. *The Stata Blog: Not Elsewhere Classified*.  
<http://blog.stata.com/2013/09/25/export-tables-to-excel/>.
- . 2018. Export tabulation results to Excel—Update. *The Stata Blog: Not Elsewhere Classified*.  
<https://blog.stata.com/2018/06/07/export-tabulation-results-to-excel-update/>.
- Gallup, J. L. 2012. A new system for formatting estimation tables. *Stata Journal* 12: 3–28.
- Huber, C. 2017. Creating Excel tables with putexcel, part 3: Writing custom reports for arbitrary variables. *The Stata Blog: Not Elsewhere Classified*. <https://blog.stata.com/2017/04/06/creating-excel-tables-with-putexcel-part-3-writing-custom-reports-for-arbitrary-variables/>.
- Quintó, L. 2012. HTML output in Stata. *Stata Journal* 12: 702–717.

## Also see

- [RPT] **putexcel** — Export results to an Excel file
- [RPT] **putdocx intro** — Introduction to generating Office Open XML (.docx) files
- [RPT] **putpdf intro** — Introduction to generating PDF files
- [D] **export** — Overview of exporting data from Stata
- [D] **import** — Overview of importing data into Stata
- [M-5] **\_docx\*()** — Generate Office Open XML (.docx) file
- [M-5] **xl()** — Excel file I/O class
- [P] **postfile** — Post results in Stata dataset
- [P] **return** — Return stored results

# Title

putpdf intro — Introduction to generating PDF files

Description

Remarks and examples

Also see

## Description

The putpdf suite of commands creates PDF documents that include text, formatted images, and tables of Stata estimation results and summary statistics. The following commands are used to create, format, add content to, and save PDF documents.

### Create and save PDF files (see [RPT] [putpdf begin](#))

putpdf begin	Creates a PDF file for export
putpdf describe	Describes contents of the active PDF file
putpdf save	Saves and closes the PDF file
putpdf clear	Closes the PDF file without saving the changes

### Insert page breaks in a PDF file (see [RPT] [putpdf pagebreak](#))

putpdf pagebreak	Adds a page break to the document
putpdf sectionbreak	Adds a new section to the document

### Add paragraph with text and images (see [RPT] [putpdf paragraph](#))

putpdf paragraph	Adds a new paragraph to the active document
putpdf text	Adds text to the active paragraph
putpdf image	Appends an image to the active paragraph

### Add tables to a PDF file (see [RPT] [putpdf table](#))

putpdf table	Creates a new table in the PDF file containing estimation results, summary statistics, or data in memory
--------------	--

In this manual entry, we show you how to use the putpdf commands by walking you through an example that creates a simple report as a PDF file.

## Remarks and examples

Remarks are presented under the following headings:

*Introduction*

*Create a PDF file*

*Add a paragraph with text*

*Add an image to a paragraph*

*Add table of estimation results*

Introduction

putpdf is a suite of commands used to write paragraphs, images, and tables to a PDF file. This allows you to create PDF files that include Stata results and graphs. With putpdf, you can also format the text, tables, and images in the document you create.

To get started with the putpdf commands, it is best to see them in action. Here we demonstrate how to create a PDF file, include text, add a graph, and incorporate an estimation table all from within Stata.

This example shows the basic tools you need to create your own document. However, this is only a starting point. You may want to create more extensive and more customized documents, and putpdf allows you to do that. We save the details of customizing text, tables, and images for the individual entries of the commands listed [above](#).

Create a PDF file

To demonstrate, we create a report on 1978 automobiles using auto.dta.

```
. use https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/auto
(1978 Automobile Data)
```

Before we can add any content to the report, we first need to create an active .pdf document in memory. We do this with the putpdf begin command.

```
. putpdf begin
```

Because we did not include any options with putpdf begin, the document created uses the letter page size and the portrait orientation.

Add a paragraph with text

Now that the document is created, we can add other objects such as paragraphs, images, and tables to it. We begin by adding a title to our report using the Courier font with size 20 and centering it.

```
. putpdf paragraph, font("Courier",20) halign(center)
. putpdf text ("Report on 1978 automobiles")
```

We added strings to this paragraph, but text can include any valid Stata expression. Below, we add text with summary statistics for our data by referring directly to the results stored after summarize. We type return list and see that r(N), r(mean), and r(max) store the number of automobiles, the average MPG, and the maximum MPG among those automobiles.

```
. summarize mpg
      Variable |      Obs      Mean   Std. Dev.      Min      Max
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
      mpg     |      74    21.2973    5.785503      12      41

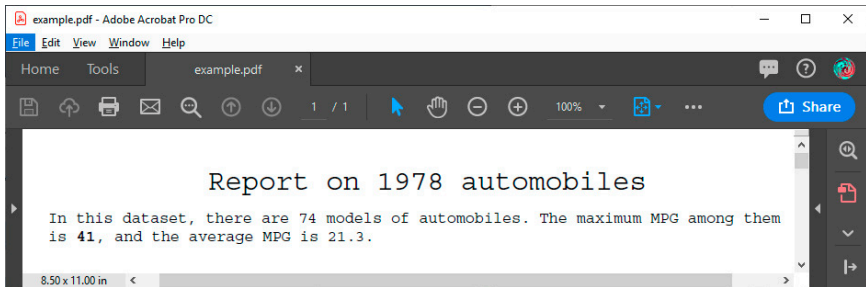
. return list
scalars:
      r(N) = 74
    r(sum_w) = 74
    r(mean) = 21.2972972972973
    r(Var) = 33.47204738985561
    r(sd) = 5.785503209735141
    r(min) = 12
    r(max) = 41
    r(sum) = 1576
```



We add a new paragraph and then refer to these scalars directly as we add text.

```
. putpdf paragraph, font("Courier")
. putpdf text ("In this dataset, there are 'r(N)')
. putpdf text (" models of automobiles. The maximum MPG among them is ")
. putpdf text (r(max)), bold
. putpdf text (" , and the average MPG is ")
. putpdf text (r(mean)), nformat("%.1f")
. putpdf text ("."), linebreak(2)
```

We formatted `r(max)` as bold and `r(mean)` with one decimal place. We also inserted two line breaks at the end of our text to create some space between this content and the next element we export. If we were to save our document now, it would contain the following:



## Add an image to a paragraph

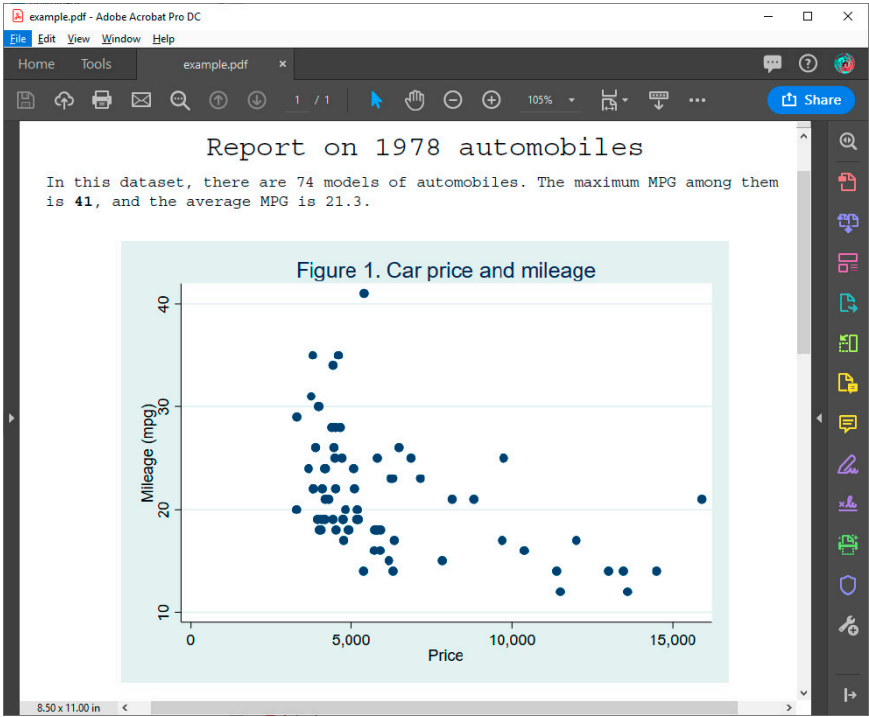
Next we add a scatterplot to our document, showing how mileage (`mpg`) correlates with the price (`price`) of cars. We use `scatter` to create our scatterplot, specifying a title for the graph. We must convert the graph to one of the supported image formats, `.png` or `.jpg`. We save it as a `.png` file with `graph export`.

```
. scatter mpg price, title("Figure 1. Car price and mileage")
. graph export auto.png
(file auto.png written in PNG format)
```

Now we use `putpdf image` to append it to the active paragraph. To center the image, we specify the alignment of the paragraph. We resize the image by setting the width at 6 inches and add a line break after the image.

```
. putpdf paragraph, halign(center)
. putpdf image auto.png, linebreak width(6)
```

If we were to save the document now, it would contain the following:



Add table of estimation results

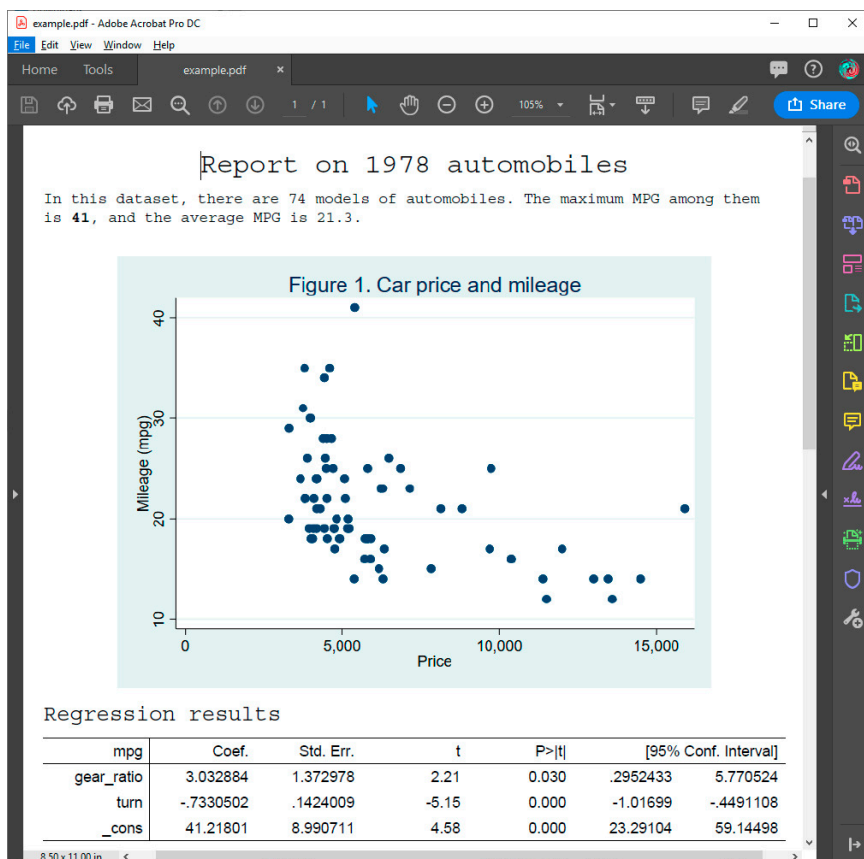
Next we will add a table with regression results after modeling fuel efficiency as a function of the car's gear ratio (`gear_ratio`) and turn radius (`turn`). We export a table named `tbl1` with all the statistics shown in the regression output below. This is done effortlessly by specifying the `etable` output type with `putpdf table`.

```
. putpdf paragraph, font("Courier",16)
. putpdf text ("Regression results")
. regress mpg gear_ratio turn, noheader
```

mpg	Coef.	Std. Err.	t	P> t	[95% Conf. Interval]	
gear_ratio	3.032884	1.372978	2.21	0.030	.2952433	5.770524
turn	-.7330502	.1424009	-5.15	0.000	-1.01699	-.4491108
_cons	41.21801	8.990711	4.58	0.000	23.29104	59.14498

```
. putpdf table tbl1 = etable
. putpdf save example.pdf
```

After saving our document, `example.pdf` appears as follows:



We will consider this our final report. However, you will likely want to create PDF files with more content and perhaps more customization. See [RPT] [putpdf begin](#) for information on formatting the document as a whole, including specifying page size, page layout, and font. See [RPT] [putpdf paragraph](#) for information on adding text to a document; modifying the style, font, alignment, and other formatting of a paragraph; and customizing the size and location of an image. See [RPT] [putpdf table](#) for information on creating tables from stored results, matrices, data, and even images and for information on customizing these tables. Finally, see [RPT] [putpdf pagebreak](#) for information on adding page breaks and section breaks to your document.

## Also see

[RPT] [putpdf begin](#) — Create a PDF file

[RPT] [putpdf pagebreak](#) — Add breaks to a PDF file

[RPT] [putpdf paragraph](#) — Add text or images to a PDF file

[RPT] [putpdf table](#) — Add tables to a PDF file

<a href="#">Description</a>	<a href="#">Quick start</a>	<a href="#">Syntax</a>	<a href="#">Options</a>
<a href="#">Remarks and examples</a>	<a href="#">References</a>	<a href="#">Also see</a>	

## Description

`putpdf begin` creates a PDF file. This is the active document that the remaining `putpdf` commands modify.

`putpdf describe` describes the active PDF file.

`putpdf save` saves and closes the PDF file.

`putpdf clear` closes the PDF file without saving.

## Quick start

Create a document in memory onto which subsequent contents are added

```
putpdf begin
```

As above, but with 1.5 inch margins on the left and right

```
putpdf begin, margin(left,1.5) margin(right,1.5)
```

Save the document in memory to disk as `myfile.pdf`

```
putpdf save myfile.pdf
```

As above, but overwrite `myfile.pdf` if it already exists

```
putpdf save myfile.pdf, replace
```

Close the document in memory without saving the changes

```
putpdf clear
```

# Syntax

Create document for export

```
putpdf begin [ , begin_options ]
```

Describe active document

```
putpdf describe
```

Save and close document

```
putpdf save filename [ , replace ]
```

Close without saving

```
putpdf clear
```

<i>begin_options</i>	Description
<code>pagesize(<i>psize</i>)</code>	set document page size
<code>landscape</code>	change document orientation to landscape
<code>font(<i>fspec</i>)</code>	set font, font size, and font color for the document
<code>halign(<i>hvalue</i>)</code>	set horizontal alignment for the document
<code>margin(<i>type</i>, # [<i>unit</i>])</code>	set page margins for the document
<code>bgcolor(<i>color</i>)</code>	set background color

## Options

Options are presented under the following headings:

*Options for putpdf begin*

*Option for putpdf save*

## Options for putpdf begin

`pagesize(psize)` sets the page size of the document. *psize* may be `letter`, `legal`, `A3`, `A4`, `A5`, `B4`, or `B5`. The default is `pagesize(letter)`.

`landscape` changes the document orientation from portrait (the default) to landscape.

`font(fontname [ , size [ , color ] ])` sets the font, font size, and font color for the document.

*fontname* may be any supported font installed on the user's computer. Base 14 fonts, Type 1 fonts, and TrueType fonts with an extension of `.ttf` and `.ttc` are supported. TrueType fonts that cannot be embedded may not be used. If *fontname* includes spaces, then it must be enclosed in double quotes. The default font is Helvetica.

*size* is a numeric value that represents font size measured in points. The default is 11.

*color* sets the text color. *color* may be one of the colors listed in [Colors](#) of [\[RPT\] Appendix for putpdf](#); a valid RGB value in the form `### ##`, for example, `171 248 103`; or a valid RRGGBB hex value in the form `#####`, for example, `ABF867`.

The font size and font color may be specified individually without specifying *fontname*. Use `font("", size)` to specify font size only. Use `font("", "", color)` to specify font color only. For both cases, the default font will be used.

`halign(hvalue)` sets the horizontal alignment of the document within the paragraphs, images, and tables. *hvalue* may be `left`, `right`, or `center`. The default is `halign(left)`.

`margin(type, unit)` sets the page margins of the document. This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to account for different margin settings.

*type* identifies the location of the margin inside the document. *type* may be `top`, `left`, `bottom`, or `right`.

*unit* may be `in` (inch), `pt` (point), `cm` (centimeter), or `twip` (twentieth of a point). An inch is equivalent to 72 points, 2.54 centimeters, or 1440 twips. The default is `in`.

`bgcolor(color)` sets the background color for the document. *color* may be one of the colors listed in [Colors](#) of [\[RPT\] Appendix for putpdf](#); a valid RGB value in the form `### ##`, for example, `171 248 103`; or a valid RRGGBB hex value in the form `#####`, for example, `ABF867`.

## Option for putpdf save

`replace` specifies to overwrite *filename*, if it exists, with the contents of the document in memory.

## Remarks and examples

Remarks are presented under the following headings:

*Creating and formatting a PDF file*  
*Describing the document*  
*Saving or clearing the PDF file*

## Creating and formatting a PDF file

Before we can write to a PDF file using `putpdf`, we need to create an active PDF document in memory by using the `putpdf begin` command. We can simply type

```
. putpdf begin
```

to create a document. We could now add content to this document. For information on adding text or images to the document, see [\[RPT\] putpdf paragraph](#). For information on adding tables to the document, see [\[RPT\] putpdf table](#).

Because we did not include any options in the above `putpdf begin` command, it creates a letter-size document with pages in portrait orientation. We can specify other formats for the document as a whole by using the options available with `putpdf begin`. We can specify the page size, page orientation, and font properties for the document.

For example, below we create a legal-sized PDF file in memory with the font Courier.

```
. putpdf begin, pagesize(legal) font("Courier")
```

The page size and orientation specified with `putpdf begin` will remain in effect until a [section break](#) is added. On the other hand, the font specification can be modified for every [paragraph](#) and addition of [text](#).

## Describing the document

To view a document, we must first save the file. However, if we have been adding text, images, and tables to a document, we can describe the contents of the active document without saving it.

```
. putpdf describe
```

This reports the number of paragraphs and tables that have been added to the document.

## Saving or clearing the PDF file

When we have finished adding content to our document, we can save it under a given filename, say, `myfile.pdf`.

```
. putpdf save myfile.pdf
```

If the file already exists in the saving directory, we will need to specify the `replace` option, which will overwrite the existing contents in the file.

Suppose we have mistakenly added an image with the wrong dimensions. Rather than saving the document in this situation, we can clear the active document from memory without saving it by typing

```
. putpdf clear
```

This command clears the document in memory and automatically closes the document without saving.

## References

- Jann, B. 2016. [Creating LaTeX documents from within Stata using texdoc](#). *Stata Journal* 16: 245–263.
- Rodríguez, G. 2017. [Literate data analysis with Stata and Markdown](#). *Stata Journal* 17: 600–618.

## Also see

- [RPT] [putpdf intro](#) — Introduction to generating PDF files
- [RPT] [putpdf pagebreak](#) — Add breaks to a PDF file
- [RPT] [putpdf paragraph](#) — Add text or images to a PDF file
- [RPT] [putpdf table](#) — Add tables to a PDF file
- [RPT] [Appendix for putpdf](#) — Appendix for putpdf entries

[Description](#)  
[Remarks and examples](#)

[Quick start](#)  
[Also see](#)

[Syntax](#)

[Options](#)

Description

`putpdf pagebreak` adds a page break to the document, placing subsequent content on the next page of the document.

`putpdf sectionbreak` adds a new section to the active document that starts on the next page. It lets you vary the page size, orientation, margins, and other properties of the pages within a single document. This formatting of sections is most useful when you want to mix portrait and landscape layouts.

Quick start

Add a page break to the document

```
putpdf pagebreak
```

Begin a new section with a landscape layout in the document

```
putpdf sectionbreak, landscape
```

As above, and specify 1 inch margins on the left and right side of the page

```
putpdf sectionbreak, landscape margin(left,1) margin(right,1)
```

Syntax

*Add page break to document*

```
putpdf pagebreak
```

*Add section break to document*

```
putpdf sectionbreak [ , section_options ]
```

<i>section_options</i>	Description
<code>pagesize(<i>psize</i>)</code>	set page size of section
<code>landscape</code>	set section orientation to landscape
<code>font(<i>fspec</i>)</code>	set font, font size, and font color
<code>halign(<i>hvalue</i>)</code>	set horizontal alignment of section
<code>margin(<i>type</i>, # [<i>unit</i> ])</code>	set page margins of section
<code>bgcolor(<i>color</i>)</code>	set background color



## Options

`pagesize(psize)` sets the page size of the section. *psize* may be `letter`, `legal`, `A3`, `A4`, `A5`, `B4`, or `B5`. The default is `pagesize(letter)`.

`landscape` changes the section orientation from portrait (the default) to landscape.

`font(fontname [ , size [ , color ] ])` sets the font, font size, and font color for the document.

*fontname* may be any supported font installed on the user's computer. Base 14 fonts, Type 1 fonts, and TrueType fonts with an extension of `.ttf` and `.ttc` are supported. TrueType fonts that cannot be embedded may not be used. If *fontname* includes spaces, then it must be enclosed in double quotes. The default font is Helvetica.

*size* is a numeric value that represents font size measured in points. The default is 11.

*color* sets the text color. *color* may be one of the colors listed in [Colors of \[RPT\] Appendix for putpdf](#); a valid RGB value in the form `### ### ###`, for example, `171 248 103`; or a valid RRGGBB hex value in the form `#####`, for example, `ABF867`.

The font size and font color may be specified individually without specifying *fontname*. Use `font("", size)` to specify font size only. Use `font("", "", color)` to specify font color only. For both cases, the default font will be used.

`halign(hvalue)` sets the horizontal alignment of the paragraphs, images, and tables within the section. *hvalue* may be `left`, `right`, or `center`. The default is `halign(left)`.

`margin(type, # [ unit ])` sets the page margins of the document. This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to account for different margin settings.

*type* identifies the location of the margin inside the document. *type* may be `top`, `left`, `bottom`, or `right`.

*unit* may be `in` (inch), `pt` (point), `cm` (centimeter), or `twip` (twentieth of a point). An inch is equivalent to 72 points, 2.54 centimeters, or 1440 twips. The default is `in`.

`bgcolor(color)` sets the background color for the document. *color* may be one of the colors listed in [Colors of \[RPT\] Appendix for putpdf](#); a valid RGB value in the form `### ### ###`, for example, `171 248 103`; or a valid RRGGBB hex value in the form `#####`, for example, `ABF867`.

## Remarks and examples

The `putpdf pagebreak` and `putpdf sectionbreak` commands are useful for organizing your PDF document. Whether you wish to insert page breaks for each new section in your file or you want to format different segments of your document differently, you can do this with these two commands.

To begin all subsequently added content on the next page in the active document, use the `putpdf pagebreak` command. This may be useful, for instance, when you do not want tables or paragraphs split across pages.

You can vary the page layout for sections of your document by using `putpdf sectionbreak`. When inserting a section break, the content that follows will be placed on the following page and formatted according to the options you specify with `putpdf sectionbreak`. You can modify the page size, orientation, font, and other features for each section. This is particularly useful if you have content in your document that varies in dimensions because you can specify a different layout for each element. For example, you may want a portrait layout for a long estimation table and a landscape layout for a wide image.

### ► Example 1: Add section break to PDF file

Suppose we have created a PDF file with the default portrait layout and added some content.

```
putpdf begin
putpdf paragraph
...
```

We now wish to add a wide image that does not fit properly in the confines of the current layout. We can begin a new section with a **landscape** layout and specify quarter-inch margins on the left and right side of the page.

```
putpdf sectionbreak, landscape margin(left,0.25) margin(right,0.25)
```

We can now export the image created in [example 2](#) of [\[RPT\] putpdf paragraph](#) with a much larger width.

```
putpdf paragraph
putpdf image scatter.png, width(11) height(7)
```

To continue adding content on the following page, retaining the **landscape** layout and small margins, we type

```
putpdf pagebreak
```

Inserting a page break simply places the following content on the next page. Any formatting options specified with `putpdf sectionbreak` will still be applied to the following pages.

To conclude this section and resume our document with a portrait layout and the default margin size, we type

```
putpdf sectionbreak
```



## Also see

- [\[RPT\] putpdf intro](#) — Introduction to generating PDF files
- [\[RPT\] putpdf begin](#) — Create a PDF file
- [\[RPT\] putpdf paragraph](#) — Add text or images to a PDF file
- [\[RPT\] putpdf table](#) — Add tables to a PDF file
- [\[RPT\] Appendix for putpdf](#) — Appendix for putpdf entries

## Description

`putpdf paragraph` adds a new paragraph to the active document. The newly created paragraph becomes the active paragraph. All subsequent text or images will be appended to the active paragraph.

`putpdf text` adds content to the paragraph created by `putpdf paragraph`. The text may be a plain text string or any valid Stata expression (see [\[U\] 13 Functions and expressions](#)).

`putpdf image` embeds a portable network graphics (.png) or JPEG (.jpg) file in the paragraph.

## Quick start

Add paragraph to the document

```
putpdf paragraph
```

As above, but with a half-inch standard paragraph indentation

```
putpdf paragraph, indent(para,0.5)
```

Append the text “This is paragraph text” to the active paragraph and format the text as bold

```
putpdf text ("This is paragraph text"), bold
```

Add a PNG image saved as `image1` to the paragraph above, with a height and width of 4 inches

```
putpdf image image1.png, height(4) width(4)
```

Add a PNG image saved as `image2` and center the image

```
putpdf paragraph, halign(center)
```

```
putpdf image image2.png
```

# Syntax

Add paragraph to document

```
putpdf paragraph [ , paragraph_options ]
```

Add text to paragraph

```
putpdf text (exp) [ , text_options ]
```

Add image to paragraph

```
putpdf image filename [ , image_options ]
```

filename is the full path to the image file or the relative path from the current working directory.

paragraph_options	Description
font(fspec)	set font, font size, and font color
halign(hvalue)	set paragraph alignment
valign(vvalue)	set vertical alignment of characters on each line
indent(indenttype, #[unit])	set paragraph indentation
spacing(position, #[unit])	set spacing between lines of text
bgcolor(color)	set background color

text_options	Description
nformat(%fmt)	specify numeric format for text
font(fspec)	set font, font size, and font color
bold	format text as bold
italic	format text as italic
script(sub   super)	set subscript or superscript formatting of text
strikeout	strike out text
underline	underline text
bgcolor(color)	set background color
linebreak[ (#) ]	add line breaks after text
allcaps	format text as all caps

image_options	Description
width(#[unit])	set image width
height(#[unit])	set image height
linebreak[ (#) ]	add line breaks after image

*fspec* is

*fontname* [ , *size* [ , *color* ] ]

*fontname* may be any supported font installed on the user's computer. Base 14 fonts, Type 1 fonts, and TrueType fonts with an extension of .ttf and .ttc are supported. TrueType fonts that cannot be embedded may not be used. If *fontname* includes spaces, then it must be enclosed in double quotes. The default font is Helvetica.

*size* is a numeric value that represents font size measured in points. The default is 11.

*color* sets the text color.

*unit* may be in (inch), pt (point), cm (centimeter), or twip (twentieth of a point). An inch is equivalent to 72 points, 2.54 centimeters, or 1440 twips. The default is in.

*color* may be one of the colors listed in [Colors](#) of [\[RPT\] Appendix for putpdf](#); a valid RGB value in the form ### ##, for example, 171 248 103; or a valid RRGGBB hex value in the form #####, for example, ABF867.

## Options

Options are presented under the following headings:

[Options for putpdf paragraph](#)

[Options for putpdf text](#)

[Options for putpdf image](#)

## Options for putpdf paragraph

`font(fontname [ , size [ , color ] ])` sets the font, font size, and font color for the text within the paragraph. The font size and font color may be specified individually without specifying *fontname*. Use `font("", size)` to specify font size only. Use `font("", "", color)` to specify font color only. For both cases, the default font will be used.

Specifying `font()` with `putpdf paragraph` overrides font settings specified with `putpdf begin`.

`halign(hvalue)` sets the horizontal alignment of the text within the paragraph. *hvalue* may be `left`, `right`, `center`, `justified`, or `distribute`. `distribute` and `justified` justify text between the left and right margins equally, but `distribute` also changes the spacing between words and characters. The default is `halign(left)`.

`valign(vvalue)` sets the vertical alignment of the characters on each line when the paragraph contains characters of varying size. *vvalue* may be `baseline`, `bottom`, `center`, or `top`. The default is `valign(baseline)`.

`indent(indenttype, # [unit])` specifies that the paragraph be indented by # *units*. *indenttype* may be `left`, `right`, or `para`. `left` and `right` indent # *units* from the left or the right, respectively. `para` uses standard paragraph indentation and indents the first line by # inches unless another *unit* is specified. This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to accommodate different indentation settings.

`spacing(position, # [unit])` sets the spacing between lines of text. *position* may be `before`, `after`, or `line`. `before` specifies the space before the first line of the current paragraph, `after` specifies the space after the last line of the current paragraph, and `line` specifies the space between lines within the current paragraph. This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to accommodate different spacing settings.

`bgcolor(color)` sets the background color for the paragraph.

Specifying `bgcolor()` with `putpdf paragraph` overrides background color specifications from `putpdf begin`.

## Options for putpdf text

`nformat(%fmt)` specifies the numeric format of the text when the content of the new text appended to the paragraph is a numeric value. This setting has no effect when the content is a string.

`font(fontname [ , size [ , color ] ])` sets the font, font size, and font color for the new text within the active paragraph. The font size and font color may be specified individually without specifying *fontname*. Use `font("", size)` to specify font size only. Use `font("", "", color)` to specify font color only. For both cases, the default font will be used.

Specifying `font()` with `putpdf text` overrides all other font settings, including those specified with `putpdf begin` and `putpdf paragraph`.

`bold` specifies that the new text in the active paragraph be formatted as bold.

`italic` specifies that the new text in the active paragraph be formatted as italic.

`script(sub|super)` changes the script style of the new text. `script(sub)` makes the text a subscript. `script(super)` makes the text a superscript.

`strikeout` specifies that the new text in the active paragraph have a strikeout mark.

`underline` specifies that the new text in the active paragraph be underlined.

`bgcolor(color)` sets the background color for the active paragraph.

Specifying `bgcolor()` with `putpdf text` overrides background color specifications from `putpdf begin` and `putpdf paragraph`.

`linebreak[ (#) ]` specifies that one or # line breaks be added after the new text.

`allcaps` specifies that all letters of the new text in the active paragraph be capitalized.

## Options for putpdf image

`width(#[unit])` sets the width of the image. If the width is larger than the body width of the document, then the body width is used. If `width()` is not specified, then the default size is used; the default is determined by the image information and the body width of the document.

`height(#[unit])` sets the height of the image. If `height()` is not specified, then the height of the image is determined by the width and the aspect ratio of the image.

`linebreak[ (#) ]` specifies that one or # line breaks be added after the new image.

## Remarks and examples

Once you have created a PDF file in memory with `putpdf begin`, you can add text and images by appending them to an active paragraph. You can control the formatting for the whole paragraph, such as font properties and alignment, with options for `putpdf paragraph`. You can further customize each addition of text with the options available with `putpdf text`. Text can include any valid Stata expression, such as a string, algebraic expression, or a direct reference to a stored result.

Remarks are presented under the following headings:

*Adding a paragraph*

*Adding an image to the document*

## Adding a paragraph

Before we can add text or an image to a document, we must first begin a new paragraph by using `putpdf paragraph`. The current paragraph remains active until you add a new paragraph, a table, a section break, or a page break.

### ► Example 1: Add a paragraph with text

Suppose we want to write a description of `auto.dta` to `example.pdf`. We first open the dataset:

```
. use https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/auto
(1978 Automobile Data)
```

We begin by adding a paragraph for the title of our report:

```
. putpdf begin
. putpdf paragraph, halign(center) font(,16)
. putpdf text ("Auto report"), bold underline
```

By specifying a font size without the actual font, we have simply incremented the size of the default font in our document. We could similarly change just the color of the font without specifying anything else.

We use `summarize` to compute summary statistics on the price of cars. We can use the [stored results](#) in the text that we write.

```
. summarize price, detail
```

Price				
Percentiles		Smallest		
1%	3291	3291		
5%	3748	3299		
10%	3895	3667	Obs	74
25%	4195	3748	Sum of Wgt.	74
50%	5006.5			
		Largest	Mean	6165.257
75%	6342	13466	Std. Dev.	2949.496
90%	11385	13594	Variance	8699526
95%	13466	14500	Skewness	1.653434
99%	15906	15906	Kurtosis	4.819188

```
. return list
```

```
scalars:
      r(N) = 74
    r(sum_w) = 74
    r(mean) = 6165.256756756757
    r(Var) = 8699525.97426879
    r(sd) = 2949.495884768919
  r(skewness) = 1.653433511704859
r(kurtosis) = 4.819187528464004
    r(sum) = 456229
    r(min) = 3291
    r(max) = 15906
    r(p1) = 3291
    r(p5) = 3748
    r(p10) = 3895
    r(p25) = 4195
    r(p50) = 5006.5
    r(p75) = 6342
    r(p90) = 11385
    r(p95) = 13466
    r(p99) = 15906
```

With the scalar names in hand, we can begin describing the prices of cars in our data. However, we first create a new paragraph because we do not want the following text to be center-aligned.

```
. putpdf paragraph, indent(para,0.5)
. putpdf text ("The average car price in this dataset is $")
. putpdf text ("'r(mean)')", nformat("%5.2f")
. putpdf text (". The 25th percentile is $'r(p25)', and the 75th percentile
> is $'r(p75)'.")
```

We request the standard paragraph indentation using the `para` option and specify a half-inch indentation. We also format the average car price to two decimal places.



## Adding an image to the document

Like text, images are appended to active paragraphs, and thus their alignment within the document is controlled by the options specified with `putpdf paragraph`. Images must be stored in one of the supported formats: portable network graphics (`.png`) or JPEG (`.jpg`) file.

### ► Example 2: Export an image to a .pdf file

Now that we know some basic information on car pricing, we can see how the price of cars correlates with their weight and mileage. We visualize this correlation with a scatterplot matrix, using `graph matrix`:

```
graph matrix weight mpg price, half
graph export scatter.png
```

Because Stata graphs use the `.gph` extension, we use `graph export` to save the scatterplot matrix as `scatter.png`. Now we can append it to a paragraph and specify the dimensions of the image.

```
putpdf paragraph, halign(center)
putpdf image scatter.png, width(4) linebreak
putpdf text ("Figure 1. Scatterplots")
```

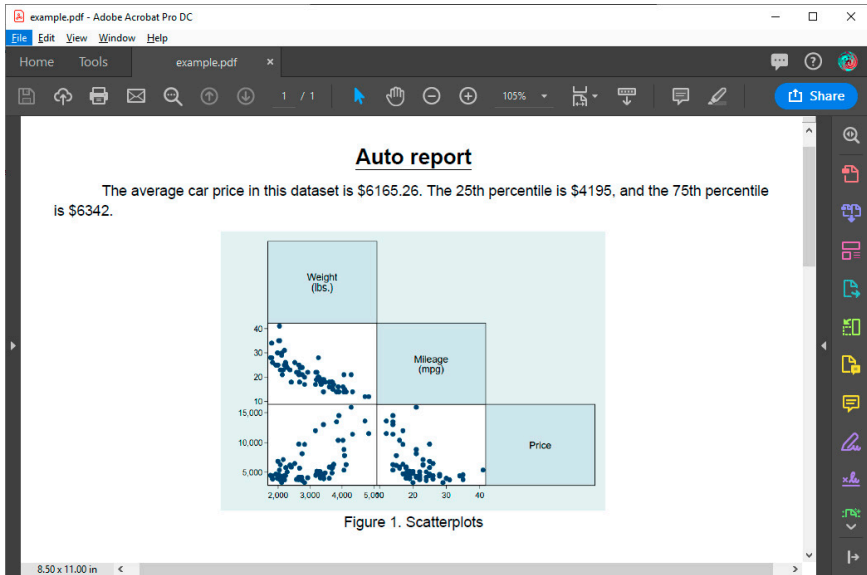
We center the image by specifying the horizontal alignment of the paragraph we are appending it to. To place a caption below the image, rather than beside it, we add a linebreak.

Now that we have added our descriptive statistics and a related graph, we can save and close our document:

```
putpdf save example.pdf
```



The document appears as follows:



◀

## Also see

- [RPT] [putpdf intro](#) — Introduction to generating PDF files
- [RPT] [putpdf begin](#) — Create a PDF file
- [RPT] [putpdf pagebreak](#) — Add breaks to a PDF file
- [RPT] [putpdf table](#) — Add tables to a PDF file
- [RPT] [Appendix for putpdf](#) — Appendix for putpdf entries

<a href="#">Description</a>	<a href="#">Quick start</a>	<a href="#">Syntax</a>	<a href="#">Options</a>
<a href="#">Remarks and examples</a>	<a href="#">Stored results</a>	<a href="#">Reference</a>	<a href="#">Also see</a>

## Description

`putpdf table` creates a new table in the active PDF file. Tables may be created from several output types, including the data in memory, matrices, and estimation results.

## Quick start

Add a table named `tbl1` with three rows and four columns to the document

```
putpdf table tbl1 = (3,4)
```

As above, but with the title “Table 1”

```
putpdf table tbl1 = (3,4), title("Table 1")
```

Insert the image in `myimg.png` in the second row and second column of table `tbl1`

```
putpdf table tbl1(2,2) = image(myimg.png)
```

Set the content of the cell on the second row and first column to be “Image 1” and center the text

```
putpdf table tbl1(2,1) = ("Image 1"), halign(center)
```

Add a table named `tbl2` with regression results after `regress`

```
putpdf table tbl2 = etable
```

Format the content on all rows of columns two through four of `tbl2` to have two decimal places

```
putpdf table tbl2(.,2/4), nformat(%5.2f)
```

Add a table with the contents matrix `mymat`, including the row names and column names of the matrix

```
putpdf table tbl3= matrix(mymat), rownames colnames
```

# Syntax

## Add table to document

```
putpdf table tablename = (nrows, ncols) [ , table_options ]
putpdf table tablename = data(varlist) [if] [in] [ , varnames obsno
    table_options ]
putpdf table tablename = matrix(matname) [ , nformat(%fmt) rownames colnames
    table_options ]
putpdf table tablename = mata(matname) [ , nformat(%fmt) table_options ]
putpdf table tablename = etable[ (#1 #2 ... #n) ] [ , table_options ]
putpdf table tablename = returnset [ , table_options ]
```

## Add content to cell

```
putpdf table tablename(i,j) = (exp) [ , cell_options ]
putpdf table tablename(i,j) = image(filename) [ , cell_options ]
putpdf table tablename(i,j) = table(mem_tablename) [ , cell_options ]
```

## Alter table layout

```
putpdf table tablename(i, .), row_col_options
putpdf table tablename(., j), row_col_options
```

## Customize format of cells or table

```
putpdf table tablename(i,j), cell_options
putpdf table tablename(numlisti, .), cell_fmt_options
putpdf table tablename(., numlistj), cell_fmt_options
putpdf table tablename(numlisti, numlistj), cell_fmt_options
putpdf table tablename(., .), cell_fmt_options
```

## Describe table

```
putpdf describe tablename
```

*tablename* specifies the name of a new table. The name must be a valid name according to Stata's naming conventions; see [\[U\] 11.3 Naming conventions](#).

<i>table_options</i>	Description
<u>memtable</u>	keep table in memory rather than add it to document
<u>width</u> (# [ <i>unit</i>   %]   <i>matname</i> )	set table width
<u>halign</u> ( <i>hvalue</i> )	set table horizontal alignment
<u>indent</u> (# [ <i>unit</i> ])	set table indentation
<u>spacing</u> ( <i>position</i> , # [ <i>unit</i> ])	set spacing before or after table
<u>border</u> ( <i>bspec</i> )	set pattern and color for border
<u>title</u> ( <i>string</i> )	add a title to the table
<u>note</u> ( <i>string</i> )	add notes to the table

<i>cell_options</i>	Description
<u>append</u>	append objects to current content of cell
<u>rowspan</u> (#)	merge cells vertically
<u>colspan</u> (#)	merge cells horizontally
<u>span</u> (# <sub>1</sub> , # <sub>2</sub> )	merge cells both horizontally and vertically
<u>linebreak</u> [ (#) ]	add line breaks into the cell
<i>cell_fmt_options</i>	options that control the look of cell contents

<i>row_col_options</i>	Description
<u>nosplit</u>	prevent row from breaking across pages
<u>addrows</u> (# [ , before   after ])	add # rows in specified location
<u>addcols</u> (# [ , before   after ])	add # columns in specified location
<u>drop</u>	drop specified row or column
<i>cell_fmt_options</i>	options that control the look of cell contents

<i>cell_fmt_options</i>	Description
<u>margin</u> ( <i>type</i> , # [ <i>unit</i> ])	set margins
<u>halign</u> ( <i>hvalue</i> )	set horizontal alignment
<u>valign</u> ( <i>vvalue</i> )	set vertical alignment
<u>border</u> ( <i>bspec</i> )	set pattern and color for border
<u>bgcolor</u> ( <i>color</i> )	set background color
<u>nformat</u> (% <i>fmt</i> )	specify numeric format for cell text
<u>font</u> ( <i>fspec</i> )	set font, font size, and font color
<u>bold</u>	format text as bold
<u>italic</u>	format text as italic
* <u>script</u> (sub   super)	set subscript or superscript formatting of text
<u>strikeout</u>	strikeout text
<u>underline</u>	underline text
<u>allcaps</u>	format text as all caps

\*May only be specified when formatting a single cell.

*fspec* is

```
fontname [ , size [ , color ] ]
```

*fontname* may be any supported font installed on the user's computer. Base 14 fonts, Type 1 fonts, and TrueType fonts with an extension of .ttf and .ttc are supported. TrueType fonts that cannot be embedded may not be used. If *fontname* includes spaces, then it must be enclosed in double quotes. The default font is Helvetica.

*size* is a numeric value that represents font size measured in points. The default is 11.

*color* sets the text color.

*bspec* is

```
bordername [ , bpattern [ , bcolor ] ]
```

*bordername* specifies the location of the border.

*bpattern* is a keyword specifying the look of the border. Possible patterns are `nil` and `single`. The default is `single`. To remove an existing border, specify `nil` as the *bpattern*.

*bcolor* specifies the border color.

*unit* may be `in` (inch), `pt` (point), `cm` (centimeter), or `twip` (twentieth of a point). An inch is equivalent to 72 points, 2.54 centimeters, or 1440 twips. The default is `in`.

*color* and *bcolor* may be one of the colors listed in [Colors](#) of [\[RPT\] Appendix for putpdf](#); a valid RGB value in the form `### ##`, for example, 171 248 103; or a valid RRGGBB hex value in the form `#####`, for example, ABF867.

## Output types for tables

The following output types are supported when creating a new table using `putpdf table tablename`:

`(nrows, ncols)` creates an empty table with *nrows* rows and *ncols* columns. A maximum of 50 columns in a table is allowed.

`data(varlist)` adds the current Stata dataset in memory as a table to the active document. *varlist* contains a list of the variable names from the current dataset in memory.

`matrix(matname)` adds a [matrix](#) called *matname* as a table to the active document.

`mata(matname)` adds a Mata [matrix](#) called *matname* as a table to the active document.

`etable[ (#1 #2 ... #n) ]` adds an automatically generated table to the active document. The table may be derived from the coefficient table of the last estimation command, from the table of margins after the last [margins](#) command, or from the table of results from one or more models displayed by [estimates table](#).

If the estimation command outputs  $n > 1$  coefficient tables, the default is to add all tables and assign the corresponding table names *tablename1*, *tablename2*, ..., *tablename<sub>n</sub>*. To specify which tables to add, supply the optional numlist to `etable`. For example, to add only the first and third tables from the estimation output, specify `etable(1 3)`. A few estimation commands do not support the `etable` output type. See [Unsupported estimation commands](#) of [\[RPT\] Appendix for putpdf](#) for a list of estimation commands that are not supported by `putpdf`.

*returnset* exports a group of Stata [return](#) values to a table in the active document. It is intended primarily for use by programmers and by those who want to do further processing of their exported results in the active document. *returnset* may be one of the following:

<i>returnset</i>	Description
<a href="#"><u>escalars</u></a>	all ereturned scalars
<a href="#"><u>rscalars</u></a>	all returned scalars
<a href="#"><u>emacros</u></a>	all ereturned macros
<a href="#"><u>rmacros</u></a>	all returned macros
<a href="#"><u>ematrices</u></a>	all ereturned matrices
<a href="#"><u>rmatrices</u></a>	all returned matrices
<a href="#"><u>e*</u></a>	all ereturned scalars, macros, and matrices
<a href="#"><u>r*</u></a>	all returned scalars, macros, and matrices

The following output types are supported when adding content to an existing table using `putpdf table tablename(i, j)`:

- `(exp)` writes a valid Stata expression to a cell; see [\[U\] 13 Functions and expressions](#).
- `image filename` adds a portable network graphics (.png) or JPEG (.jpg) file to the table cell. *filename* is the path to the image file. It may be either the full path or the relative path from the current working directory.
- `table(mem_tablename)` adds a previously created table, identified by *mem\_tablename*, to the table cell.

The following combinations of `tablename(numlisti, numlistj)` (see [\[U\] 11.1.8 numlist](#) for valid specifications) can be used to format a cell or range of cells in an existing table:

- `tablename(i, j)` specifies the cell on the *i*th row and *j*th column.
- `tablename(i, .)` and `tablename(numlisti, .)` specify all cells on the *i*th row or on the rows identified by *numlist<sub>*i*</sub>*.
- `tablename(., j)` and `tablename(., numlistj)` specify all cells in the *j*th column or in the columns identified by *numlist<sub>*j*</sub>*.
- `tablename(., .)` specifies the whole table.

## Options

Options are presented under the following headings:

- [table\\_options](#)
- [cell\\_options](#)
- [row\\_col\\_options](#)
- [cell\\_fmt\\_options](#)

## table\_options

**mentable** specifies that the table be created and held in memory instead of being added to the active document. By default, the table is added to the document immediately after it is created. This option is useful if the table is intended to be added to a cell of another table or to be used multiple times later.

**width**(#[*unit*|%]) and **width**(*matname*) set the table width. Any two of the types of width specifications can be combined.

**width**(#[*unit*|%]) sets the width based on a specified value. # may be an absolute width or a percentage of the default table width, which is determined by the page width of the document. For example, **width**(50%) sets the table width to 50% of the default table width. The default is **width**(100%).

**width**(*matname*) sets the table width based on the dimensions specified in the Stata matrix *matname*, which has contents in the form of ( $\#_1, \#_2, \dots, \#_n$ ) to denote the percent of the default table width for each column.  $n$  is the number of columns of the table, and the sum of  $\#_1$  to  $\#_n$  must be equal to 100.

**halign**(*hvalue*) sets the horizontal alignment of the table within the page. *hvalue* may be **left**, **right**, or **center**. The default is **halign**(**left**).

**indent**(#[*unit*]) specifies the table indentation from the left margin of the current document.

**spacing**(*position*, #[*unit*]) sets the spacing before or after the table. *position* may be **before** or **after**. **before** specifies the space before the top of the current table, and **after** specifies the space after the bottom of the current table. This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to account for different space settings.

**border**(*bordername* [, *bpattern* [, *bcolor*]]) adds a single border in the location specified by *bordername*, which may be **start**, **end**, **top**, **bottom**, **insideH** (inside horizontal borders), **insideV** (inside vertical borders), or **all**. Optionally, you may change the pattern and color for the border by specifying *bpattern* and *bcolor*.

This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to accommodate different border settings. If multiple **border**() options are specified, they are applied in the order specified from left to right.

**varnames** specifies that the variable names be included as the first row in the table when the table is created using the dataset in memory. By default, only the data values are added to the table.

**obsno** specifies that the observation numbers be included as the first column in the table when the table is created using the dataset in memory. By default, only the data values are added to the table.

**nformat**(%*fmt*) specifies the numeric format to be applied to the source values when creating the table from a Stata or Mata matrix. The default is **nformat**(%12.0g).

**rownames** specifies that the row names of the Stata matrix be included as the first column in the table. By default, only the matrix values are added to the table.

**colnames** specifies that the column names of the Stata matrix be included as the first row in the table. By default, only the matrix values are added to the table.

**title**(*string*) inserts a row without borders above the current table. The added row spans all the columns of the table and contains *string* as text. The added row shifts all other table contents down by one row. You should account for this when referencing table cells in subsequent commands.

`note(string)` inserts a row without borders to the bottom of the table. The added row spans all the columns of the table. This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to add notes on new lines within the same cell. Note text is inserted in the order it was specified from left to right.

## cell\_options

`append` specifies that the new content for the cell be appended to the current content of the cell. If `append` is not specified, then the current content of the cell is replaced by the new content. Unlike with the `putdocx` command, this option with `putpdf` is used only for appending a new string to the cell when the original cell content is also a string.

`rowspan(#)` sets the specified cell to span vertically `#` cells downward. If the span exceeds the total number of rows in the table, the span stops at the last row.

`colspan(#)` sets the specified cell to span horizontally `#` cells to the right. If the span exceeds the total number of columns in the table, the span stops at the last column.

`span(#1, #2)` sets the specified cell to span `#1` cells downward and span `#2` cells to the right.

`linebreak[ (#) ]` specifies that one or `#` line breaks be added after the text within the cell.

## row\_col\_options

`nosplit` specifies that row *i* not split across pages. When a table row is displayed, a page break may fall within the contents of a cell on the row, causing the contents of that cell to be displayed across two pages. `nosplit` prevents this behavior. If the entire row cannot fit on the current page, the row will be moved to the start of the next page.

`addrows(# [ , before|after ])` adds `#` rows to the current table before or after row *i*. If `before` is specified, the rows are added before the specified row. By default, rows are added after the specified row.

`addcols(# [ , before|after ])` adds `#` columns to the current table to the right or the left of column *j*. If `before` is specified, the columns are added to the left of the specified column. By default, the columns are added after, or to the right of, the specified column.

`drop` deletes row *i* or column *j* from the table.

## cell\_fmt\_options

`margin(type, # [unit] )` sets the margins inside the specified cell or of all cells in the specified row, column, or range. *type* may be `top`, `left`, `bottom`, or `right`, which identify the top margin, left margin, bottom margin, or right margin of the cell, respectively. This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to account for different margin settings.

`halign(hvalue)` sets the horizontal alignment of the specified cell or of all cells in the specified row, column, or range. *hvalue* may be `left`, `right`, or `center`. The default is `halign(left)`.

`valign(vvalue)` sets the vertical alignment of the specified cell or of all cells in the specified row, column, or range. *vvalue* may be `top`, `bottom`, or `center`. The default is `valign(top)`.

`border(bordername [ , bpattern [ , bcolor ] )` adds a single border to the specified cell or to all cells in the specified row, column, or range in the given location. *bordername* may be `start`, `end`, `top`, `bottom`, or `all`. Optionally, you may change the pattern and color for the border by specifying *bpattern* and *bcolor*.



This option may be specified multiple times in a single command to accommodate different border settings. If multiple `border()` options are specified, they are applied in the order specified from left to right.

`bgcolor(color)` sets the background color for the specified cell or for all cells in the specified row, column, or range.

`nformat(%fmt)` applies the Stata numeric format *%fmt* to the text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range. This setting only applies when the content of the cell is a numeric value.

`font(fontname [, size [, color]])` sets the font, font size, and font color for the text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range. The font size and font color may be specified individually without specifying *fontname*. Use `font("", size)` to specify font size only. Use `font("", "", color)` to specify font color only. For both cases, the default font will be used.

`bold` applies bold formatting to the text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range.

`italic` applies italic formatting to the text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range.

`script(sub|super)` changes the script style of the text. `script(sub)` makes the text a subscript. `script(super)` makes the text a superscript. `script()` may only be specified when formatting a single cell.

`strikeout` adds a strikeout mark to the current text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range.

`underline` adds an underline to the current text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range.

`allcaps` uses capital letters for all letters of the current text within the specified cell or within all cells in the specified row, column, or range.

## Remarks and examples

The suite of `putpdf` commands makes it easy to export summary statistics, estimation results, data, and images in neatly formatted tables. There are different output types available to export a whole coefficient table, matrix, or dataset in a single step. Alternatively, you can create a table by specifying the dimensions and then gradually inserting contents, such as text, images, and stored results. When you create a table you specify a name for it, which allows you to make further modifications to its contents. You can customize each cell, or apply a specific formatting to a range of cells with row and column indexes.

Remaining remarks are presented under the following headings:

- [Creating basic tables](#)
- [Exporting summary statistics](#)
- [Exporting estimation results](#)
- [Creating advanced tables](#)

## Creating basic tables

When exporting only a few statistics and results, you can create a table from scratch—first specifying the size of the table and then adding content one cell at a time. With this method, it is easy to control the location of each element within the table.

### ➤ Example 1: Export a basic table

Suppose we want to export a table with just the mean, minimum, and maximum miles per gallon for 1978 automobiles to a .pdf file. First, we load the dataset and create a document in memory.

```
. sysuse auto, clear
. putpdf begin
```

Now we create our table with the necessary dimensions. We are exporting three statistics that will appear in one column. We need to allot another column to label these statistics. Therefore, we create a table named `mpgstats` with three rows and two columns, and we add a title. By default, the table width is set at 100%, but because our content is rather short, we set the width to 40% of the default. Otherwise, the table would take up a large portion of our document and look very empty.

```
. putpdf table mpgstats = (3,2), title(Mpg summary statistics) width(40%)
. putpdf describe mpgstats
```

<b>Table name</b>	mpgstats
<b>No. of rows</b>	4
<b>No. of cols</b>	2

When we describe our table, it reports four rows instead of the three we specified. When we add a title, it is included as the first row of the table without any borders. With our table in place, we now summarize `mpg` and view the list of stored results:

```
. summarize mpg
```

Variable	Obs	Mean	Std. Dev.	Min	Max
mpg	74	21.2973	5.785503	12	41

```
. return list
```

scalars:

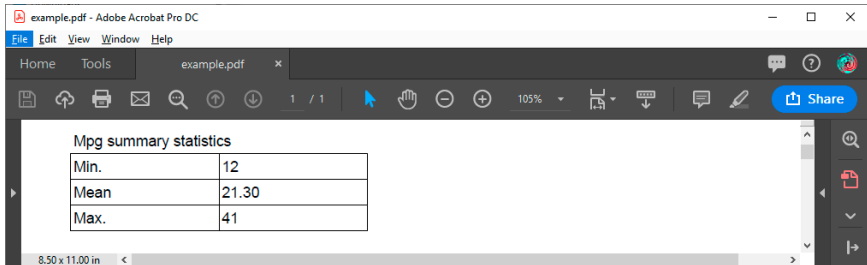
```
      r(N) = 74
    r(sum_w) = 74
  r(mean) = 21.2972972972973
  r(Var) = 33.47204738985561
    r(sd) = 5.785503209735141
  r(min) = 12
  r(max) = 41
  r(sum) = 1576
```

All the statistics we want are stored in `rclass` scalars. We can directly refer to stored results with `putpdf table`. We begin filling in the table by putting the label for the minimum in the second row and first column, `mpgstats(2,1)`. Then we add the value of the minimum in the cell next to it, `mpgstats(2,2)`, by referring to the `r(min)` scalar shown above. Similarly, we add the mean on row 3 and the maximum on row 4.

```
. putpdf table mpgstats(2,1) = ("Min.")
. putpdf table mpgstats(2,2) = (r(min))
. putpdf table mpgstats(3,1) = ("Mean")
. putpdf table mpgstats(3,2) = (r(mean)), nformat(%5.2f)
. putpdf table mpgstats(4,1) = ("Max.")
```

```
. putpdf table mpgstats(4,2) = (r(max))
. putpdf save example
```

We format the mean of mpg to report only two digits after the decimal. After saving our work, `example.pdf` contains the following:



◀

## Exporting summary statistics

In the example above, we exported just a few summary statistics by filling in the content of each cell in a table. That method would be tedious if we wanted to export several results. Another option is to create a dataset of summary statistics and export the entire dataset to a table, as shown in the example below.

### ► Example 2: Export a dataset of summary statistics

Suppose that now we want to report the summary statistics separately for foreign and domestic automobiles. We create a new active document, and then we use the `statsby` command to collect the number of observations along with the minimum, mean, and maximum of mpg for each group. Because `statsby` creates a new dataset that overwrites the dataset in memory, we need to **preserve** the dataset and then **restore** it after we have finished exporting the data.

```
. putpdf begin
. preserve
. statsby Obs=r(N) Min=r(min) Mean=r(mean) Max=r(max), by(foreign):
> summarize mpg
(running summarize on estimation sample)
      command:  summarize mpg
              Obs:  r(N)
              Min:  r(min)
              Mean:  r(mean)
              Max:  r(max)
              by:  foreign

Statsby groups
-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
      1 2 3 4 5
..
```

We want the variable names to serve as column titles, so we rename `foreign` to `Origin`. Then, we export the data in memory as a table by specifying in `data()` the variable names `Origin`, `Obs`, `Min`, `Mean`, and `Max`. In this case, we use the table name `tbl1`. The order of the variable names in the list determines the column order in the table.

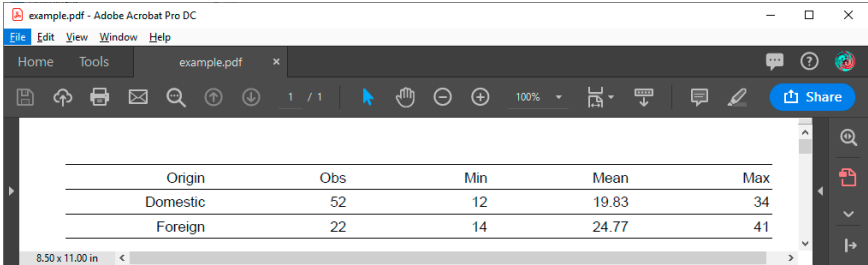
```
. rename foreign Origin
. putpdf table tbl1 = data("Origin Obs Min Mean Max"), varnames
> border(start, nil) border(insideV, nil) border(end, nil)
```

By default, the exported table includes single borders around all cells. We use the `border()` option to remove all vertical borders from the table.

We further customize the table by setting the text for all cells of the table to be right-aligned instead of the default left-alignment. Because we would like all cells in the table to be right-aligned, we specify “.” for both the row and column specification.

```
. putpdf table tbl1(.,.), halign(right)
. putpdf table tbl1(2/3,4), nformat(%5.2f)
. putpdf save example, replace
```

We save our work, replacing the existing `example.pdf` file with the contents of `tbl1`:



Afterward, we restore the dataset.

```
. restore
```

Exporting estimation results

One of the primary uses of `putpdf table` is to export estimation results. Suppose we fit a linear regression model of `mpg` as a function of the car’s gear ratio (`gear_ratio`), turning radius (`turn`), and whether the car is of foreign origin (`foreign`) using `regress`.

```
. regress mpg gear_ratio turn foreign, noheader
```

mpg	Coef.	Std. Err.	t	P> t	[95% Conf. Interval]	
gear_ratio	4.855506	1.522481	3.19	0.002	1.819013	7.891999
turn	-.8364698	.1440204	-5.81	0.000	-1.123709	-.5492302
foreign	-3.503218	1.433526	-2.44	0.017	-6.362296	-.6441404
_cons	40.865	8.692731	4.70	0.000	23.52789	58.2021

We want to add these regression results to the document. For most estimation commands, we can use the `etable` output type to add the elements of the displayed coefficient table. To export all columns of the default `regress` output, we need type only

```
. putpdf table reg = etable
```

But we need not stop there. In [example 3](#), we select a subset of the results and format them.

### ► Example 3: Export selected estimation results

Suppose we want to export only the point estimates and confidence intervals from the table above; we can also use `putpdf table` to remove the components that we do not want.

First, we create a new active document and add a table, `tbl2`, containing the estimation results from `regress`. We specify the `width` option to ensure that the table occupies the full page width of the document. Next, we want to remove the third through the fifth columns. To drop the fifth column, we specify `tbl2(.,5)` followed by the `drop` option. We work from right to left, dropping column five before four, because in this manner, the column numbers to the left of the newly dropped column do not change.

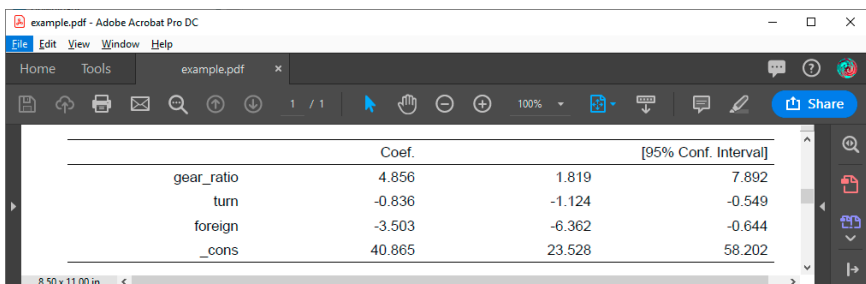
```
. putpdf begin
. putpdf table tbl2 = etable, width(100%)
. putpdf table tbl2(.,5), drop //drop p-value column
. putpdf table tbl2(.,4), drop //drop t column
. putpdf table tbl2(.,3), drop //drop SE column
```

Equivalently, we could have dropped the third column three times, because each time we drop it, the previous fourth column becomes the third.

Now that we have only the statistics we want, we can format our table by removing the border on the right side of the first column. To do this, we specify `nil` as the border pattern for the right border. We also format all estimates, in what will now be columns two through four, to have three decimal places by specifying the column indexes as a range. Finally, we erase the text “mpg” from the header for the first column and save our work.

```
. putpdf table tbl2(.,1), border(right, nil)
. putpdf table tbl2(.,2/4), nformat(%9.3f)
. putpdf table tbl2(1,1) = ("") // erase the content of first cell "mpg"
. putpdf save example, replace
```

Our final table appears in `example.pdf` as follows:



	Coef.	[95% Conf. Interval]	
gear_ratio	4.856	1.819	7.892
turn	-0.836	-1.124	-0.549
foreign	-3.503	-6.362	-0.644
_cons	40.865	23.528	58.202

In this example, because we wanted to use the same number of decimals for all estimates in our table and because we are using the `etable` output type, we could have preemptively set the format with our `regress` command. The modified version of the command is

```
. regress mpg gear_ratio turn foreign, noheader cformat(%9.3f)
```

This avoids the need to issue a separate formatting command.

◀

The `etable` output type also works after `estimates table`, and you may find it easier to build a table of selected estimates prospectively. See [example 3](#) in [\[R\] estimates table](#) for an illustration.

## Creating advanced tables

Sometimes, we need to create highly customized tables with complex layouts. `putpdf table` has many features that will allow you to create and incorporate sophisticated tables in your documents.

First, we demonstrate how to create a table from a matrix. While this method works with any Stata matrix, we will demonstrate by using a matrix of stored results from `regress`. See [U] 14 [Matrix expressions](#) for information on working with Stata matrices.

Exporting a matrix is particularly useful when you want to export results that are returned in a matrix but those results are not the coefficients, standard errors,  $p$ -values, and confidence intervals reported by a regression command. In addition, a small set of estimation commands do not support the `etable` output type; however, matrices of stored results can be exported when using these commands. For a list of estimation commands that do not support the `etable` output type, see [Unsupported estimation commands](#) of [RPT] [Appendix for putpdf](#).

### ► Example 4: Export selected estimation results from a matrix

To illustrate the basic use of matrix manipulation of stored results to create an estimation table, we re-create the simple estimation table from [example 3](#). The displayed results returned by `regress` are stored in the matrix `r(table)`, which can be viewed by typing `matrix list`.

```
. matrix list r(table)
r(table) [9,4]
      gear_ratio      turn      foreign      _cons
b      4.8555057     -.83646975    -3.5032183    40.864996
se     1.5224812     .14402036     1.4335262     8.6927313
t       3.1892057    -5.8079965     -2.4437769     4.7010537
pvalue   .0021348     1.704e-07     .01705791     .00001258
ll      1.8190127    -1.1237093     -6.3622962    23.527891
ul      7.8919987    -1.5492302     -1.6441404     58.202102
df         70         70         70         70
crit     1.9944371    1.9944371     1.9944371     1.9944371
eform         0         0         0         0
```

First, we create the matrix `rtable` as the transpose of `r(table)` because we want to see the variable names in rows. The point estimates and confidence intervals in the regression table can be extracted from the matrix `rtable`. We can extract columns 1, 5, and 6 from `rtable`, combine them, and assign them to another new matrix, `r_table`.

```
. matrix rtable = r(table)'
. matrix r_table = rtable[1...,1], rtable[1...,5..6]
```

Then we create a new active document and export `r_table` as a table with the name `tbl3`.

```
. putpdf begin
. putpdf table tbl3 = matrix(r_table), nformat(%9.3f) rownames colnames
> border(start, nil) border(insideH, nil) border(insideV, nil) border(end, nil)
```

In this table, all values imported from the matrix have been formatted as `%9.3f`. In addition, the row and column names of the matrix `r_table` are included as the first column and first row of the table. We keep only the top and bottom borders of the table by specifying `nil` for the leading edge border (`start`), trailing edge border (`end`), inside horizontal edges border (`insideH`), and inside vertical edges border (`insideV`).

The column names (`b`, `ll`, and `ul`) from the matrix may not be exactly what we want; we can modify them by customizing the corresponding cells. We can reset the contents and the horizontal alignment of the cells on the first row to give the columns new titles.

```
. putpdf table tbl3(1,2) = ("Coef."), halign(right)
. putpdf table tbl3(1,3) = ("[95% Conf. Interval]"), halign(right) colspan(2)
```

Afterward, we add back the bottom border of the first row and right-align the cells on the rest of the rows by specifying the row range as two through five.

```
. putpdf table tbl3(1,.), border(bottom)
. putpdf table tbl3(2/5,.), halign(right)
. putpdf save example, replace
```

Our final table will be identical to that shown in [example 3](#).

◀

## ► Example 5: Export tabulation results

Matrices are an alternative method for exporting results from estimation commands that do not support the `etable` output type, but we can also use them to export the results from nonestimation commands. For example, if we want to export the cross-tabulation of repair records and car origins, we can export this data as a matrix. We begin by adding a value label to the `rep78` variable.

```
. label define repairs 1 "Poor" 2 "Fair" 3 "Average" 4 "Good" 5 "Excellent"
. label values rep78 repairs
```

Next we `tabulate` our variables of interest, storing the frequencies in a matrix named `repairs`. We then create a new active document and add the matrix contents as a table, `tbl4`, adding a column at the end for the totals.

```
. tabulate foreign rep78, matcell(repairs)
```

Car type	Repair Record 1978					Total
	Poor	Fair	Average	Good	Excellent	
Domestic	2	8	27	9	2	48
Foreign	0	0	3	9	9	21
Total	2	8	30	18	11	69

```
. putpdf begin
. putpdf table tbl4 = matrix(repairs), rownames colnames
. putpdf table tbl4(.,6), addcols(1)
. putpdf table tbl4(1,7) = ("Total")
```

We have exported the tabulations, but we still need to label the columns and rows. We begin by looping over the two values of `foreign`, 0 and 1. We use the extended macro function `label` to store the labels for each category in the macro `'r1b1'`. Within that loop, we also loop over the five columns for repair records and label the columns similarly. To calculate the row totals, we create a macro `freq'row'_val` that points to the frequency of a given cell. We store the cumulative frequencies in the macro `cumul_freq'row'`, which is incremented in each run of the loop.

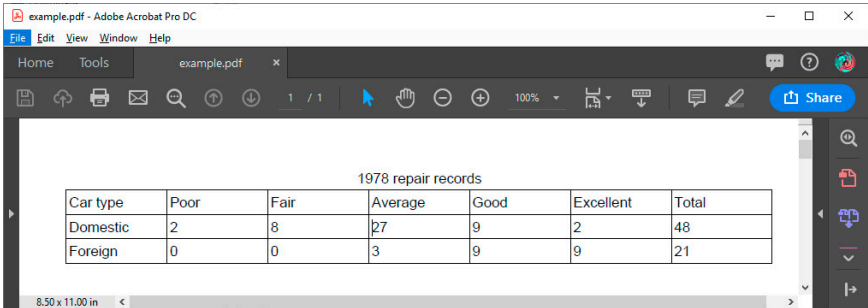
```
. forvalues i=0/1 {
2.   local r1b1: label (foreign) 'i'
3.   local row = 'i' + 2
4.   putpdf table tbl4('row',1) = ("'r1b1'")
5.
6.   forvalues j=1/5 {
7.     local c1b1: label (rep78) 'j'
8.     local cstart = 'j' + 1
9.     putpdf table tbl4(1,'cstart') = ("'c1b1'")
10.    local freq'row'_val = repairs['i'+1,'j']
```

```
10.         local cumul_freq'row' = 'cumul_freq'row'' + 'freq'row'_val'
11.         putpdf table tbl4('row',7) = ("'cumul_freq'row'")
12.         }
13. }
```

Once all the frequencies have been exported, we insert a row at the top of the table to provide a title. Additionally, we provide a label for the first column.

```
. putpdf table tbl4(1,.), addrows(1,before)
. putpdf table tbl4(1,1)= ("1978 repair records"), colspan(7) halign(center)
> border(left,nil) border(top,nil) border(right,nil)
. putpdf table tbl4(2,1)= ("Car type")
. putpdf save example, replace
```

The table appears in our document as follows:



In the example above, we exported the cross-tabulation of `foreign` and `rep78` using the matrix of stored results. To complete our table, we added a column for the totals and a row for the title. Similarly, in your work you may need to add components to a table after the initial export of results. In the example below, we demonstrate how to create a table by gradually adding components.

➤ Example 6: Create a table dynamically

Below, we use Census data recording the death rate (`drate`) and median age (`medage`) for each state. The data also record four regions of the country in which each state is located, NE, N Cntrl, South, and West. We fit a linear regression model and store the transpose of rows 1, 5, and 6 in column matrices named `b`, `ll`, and `ul`.



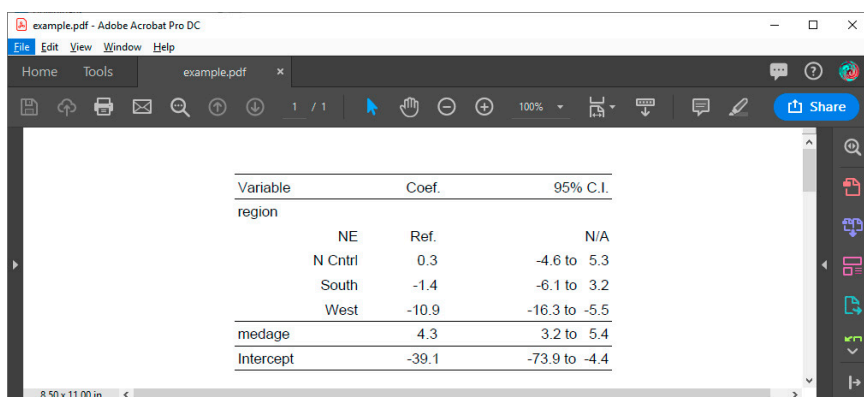
```
. use https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/census9
(1980 Census data by state)

. regress drate i.region medage [aw=pop], noheader
(sum of wgt is 225,907,472)
```

drate	Coef.	Std. Err.	t	P> t	[95% Conf. Interval]	
region						
N Cntrl	.3138738	2.456431	0.13	0.899	-4.633632	5.26138
South	-1.438452	2.320244	-0.62	0.538	-6.111663	3.234758
West	-10.90629	2.681349	-4.07	0.000	-16.30681	-5.505777
medage	4.283183	.5393329	7.94	0.000	3.196911	5.369455
_cons	-39.14727	17.23613	-2.27	0.028	-73.86262	-4.431915

```
. matrix rtable = r(table)
. matrix b = rtable[1,1...]'
. matrix ll = rtable[5,1...]'
. matrix ul = rtable[6,1...]'
```

Our goal is to collect the point estimates and confidence intervals and output a table that looks like the following:



Variable	Coef.	95% C.I.
region		
NE	Ref.	N/A
N Cntrl	0.3	-4.6 to 5.3
South	-1.4	-6.1 to 3.2
West	-10.9	-16.3 to -5.5
medage	4.3	3.2 to 5.4
Intercept	-39.1	-73.9 to -4.4

To create our table of point estimates and confidence intervals, we add a  $1 \times 3$  table with no borders to our new active document and fill the single row with Variable, Coef., and 95% C.I.. We also set the table width to be 4 inches, put the table in the center of the document, and add back the top and bottom borders.

```
. putpdf begin
. putpdf table tbl5 = (1,3), border(all,nil) width(4) halign(center)
. putpdf table tbl5(1,1)=("Variable"), border(top) border(bottom)
. putpdf table tbl5(1,2)=("Coef."), halign(center) border(top) border(bottom)
. putpdf table tbl5(1,3)=("95% C.I."), halign(right) border(top) border(bottom)
```

Afterward, we add one row to the end of the table and fill in the content of the first column in this row as region.

```
. putpdf table tbl5(1,:), addrows(1)
. putpdf table tbl5(2,1)=("region")
```

In the resulting table, the `region` variable has four levels, and each level takes up one row. The `medage` variable and the constant term take up another two rows. For each row, the first column contains the variable label, the second column contains the point estimate that is stored in the matrix `b`, and the third column contains a formatted string of the lower limit and upper limit of the confidence intervals. Those two levels are stored in matrix `ll` and `ul`, respectively.

Based on the above information, we add those rows one by one at the end of the table and fill in the content and format for each cell in the corresponding row. Notice that `NE` is the base level of `region`; its point estimate and confidence interval are replaced by `Ref.` and `N/A` in the resulting table. In addition, we reset the top and bottom borders for `medage` and `Intercept`.

```
. local row 2
. local i 1
. foreach name in "NE" "N Cntrl" "South" "West" "medage" "Intercept" {
2.   putpdf table tbl5('row',.), addrows(1)
3.   local ++row
4.   if "'name'"=="NE" {
5.       local coef "Ref."
6.       local ci "N/A"
7.   }
8.   else {
9.       local coef : display %5.1f b['i',1]
10.      local low : display %5.1f ll['i',1]
11.      local upp : display %5.1f ul['i',1]
12.      local ci "'low' to 'upp'"
13.  }
14.  putpdf table tbl5('row', 1) = ("'name'"), halign(right)
15.  putpdf table tbl5('row', 2) = ("'coef'"), halign(center)
16.  putpdf table tbl5('row', 3) = ("'ci'"), halign(right)
17.  if "'name'"=="medage" | "'name'"=="Intercept" {
18.      putpdf table tbl5('row', 1), halign(left) border(top)
>      border(bottom)
19.      putpdf table tbl5('row', 2), border(top) border(bottom)
20.      putpdf table tbl5('row', 3), border(top) border(bottom)
21.  }
22.      local ++i
23. }
. putpdf save example, replace
```

◀

Aside from estimation results and summary statistics, you may want to export images to a PDF file. Images can be exported simply by appending them to an active paragraph or by inserting them in a table. The same formatting options are available regardless of how you export an image. Of course, when inserting an image in a table, the size is constrained to the dimensions of the given cell.

## ► Example 7: Nesting images in a table

We might want to add various images to the document and align them side by side, row by row, or both. To be more clear, we use an example to illustrate this purpose. In this example, we use another dataset—the Second National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES II) ([McDowell et al. 1981](#)).

First, we fit a three-way full factorial model of systolic blood pressure on age group, sex, and body mass index (BMI). Then, we estimate the predictive margins for each combination of `agegrp` and `sex` at levels of BMI from 10 through 40 at intervals of 10 and graph the results.

```
. use https://www.stata-press.com/data/r16/nhanes2, clear
. regress bpsystol agegrp##sex##c.bmi
(output omitted)
. forvalues v=10(10)40 {
2.     margins agegrp, over(sex) at(bmi='v')
3.     marginsplot
4.     graph export bmi'v'.png
5. }
(output omitted)
```

Now we want to add those four plots into the document, requiring that the margins plots for `bmi=10` and `bmi=20` lay side by side on top of the other two side-by-side margins plots for `bmi=30` and `bmi=40`. It is also required that each plot have a subtitle indicating the level of BMI and that the final figure have a title. This complicated layout can be accomplished using `putpdf table`.

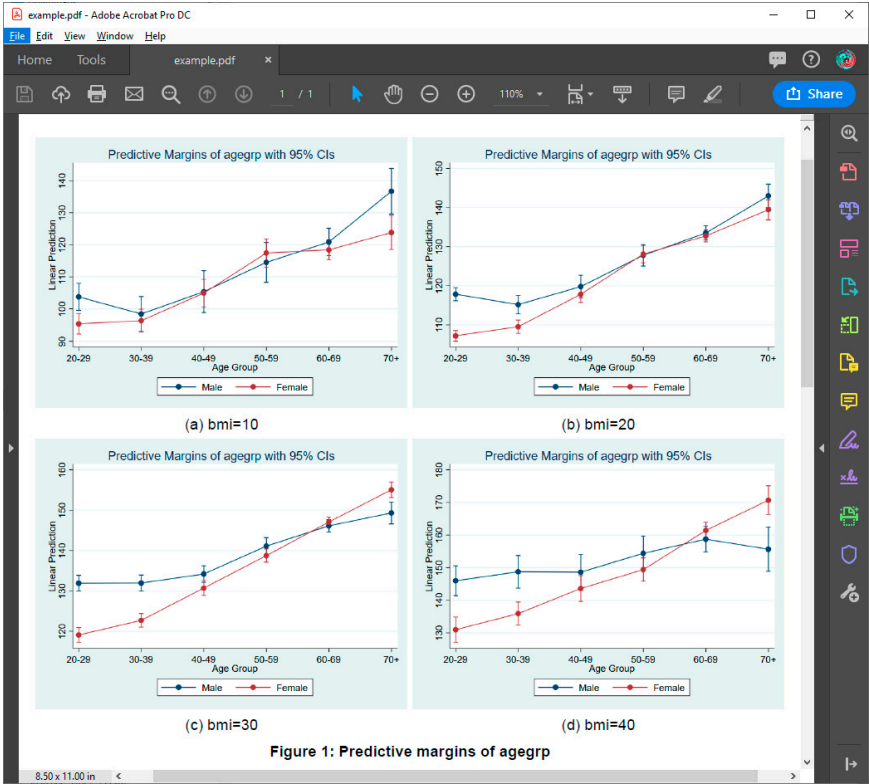
We create a new active document with a  $4 \times 2$  table and remove all of its borders. We caption our table by using the `note()` option. In each cell on the odd rows, we add a plot. We fill each cell on the even rows with the title corresponding to the plot above it and center-align the text in the cell.

```
. putpdf begin
. putpdf table tbl6 = (4,2), border(all,nil)
> note(Figure 1: Predictive margins of agegrp)
. putpdf table tbl6(1,1)=image(bmi10.png)
. putpdf table tbl6(2,1)=("(a) bmi=10"), halign(center)
. putpdf table tbl6(1,2)=image(bmi20.png)
. putpdf table tbl6(2,2)=("(b) bmi=20"), halign(center)
. putpdf table tbl6(3,1)=image(bmi30.png)
. putpdf table tbl6(4,1)=("(c) bmi=30"), halign(center)
. putpdf table tbl6(3,2)=image(bmi40.png)
. putpdf table tbl6(4,2)=("(d) bmi=40"), halign(center)
```

We formatted our table and the cell contents as we added content to the document. However, we would also like to format the caption. The `note()` option adds an additional row at the end of the table that spans all the columns of the table. We can format the text of the note by specifying the last row (in this case, 5) and either `.` or `1` as the column index. Here, we center-align and bold the text of the caption. Because note text is always placed within a single merged cell, it does not matter how short or long the text is when you identify the cell location.

```
. putpdf table tbl6(5,.), halign(center) bold
. putpdf save example, replace
```

This creates a table in `example.pdf` that looks like the following:



Stored results

`putpdf` describe *tablename* stores the following in `r()`:

Scalars

<code>r(nrows)</code>	number of rows in the table
<code>r(ncols)</code>	number of columns in the table

Reference

McDowell, A., A. Engel, J. T. Massey, and K. Maurer. 1981. Plan and operation of the Second National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 1976–1980. *Vital and Health Statistics* 1(15): 1–144.

## Also see

- [RPT] [putpdf intro](#) — Introduction to generating PDF files
- [RPT] [putpdf begin](#) — Create a PDF file
- [RPT] [putpdf pagebreak](#) — Add breaks to a PDF file
- [RPT] [putpdf paragraph](#) — Add text or images to a PDF file
- [RPT] [Appendix for putpdf](#) — Appendix for putpdf entries

DescriptionAlso see

Description

This is the collective appendix for the putpdf entries: [RPT] **putpdf begin**, [RPT] **putpdf pagebreak**, [RPT] **putpdf paragraph**, and [RPT] **putpdf table**.

Colors

<i>color, bcolor</i>	
aliceblue	darkorange
antiquewhite	darkorchid
aqua	darkred
aquamarine	darksalmon
azure	darkseagreen
beige	darkslateblue
bisque	darkslategray
black	darkturquoise
blanchedalmond	darkviolet
blue	deeppink
blueviolet	deepskyblue
brown	dimgrey
burlywood	dodgerblue
cadetblue	firebrick
chartreuse	floralwhite
chocolate	forestgreen
coral	fuchsia
cornflowerblue	gainsboro
cornsilk	ghostwhite
crimson	gold
cyan	goldenrod
darkblue	gray
darkcyan	green
darkgoldenrod	greenyellow
darkgray	honeydew
darkgreen	hotpink
darkkhaki	indianred
darkmagenta	indigo
darkolivegreen	ivory

*color, bcolor, continued*

khaki	orange
lavender	orangered
lavenderblush	orchid
lawngreen	palegoldenrod
lemonchiffon	palegreen
lightblue	paleturquoise
lightcoral	palevioletred
lightcyan	papayawhip
lightgoldenrodyellow	peachpuff
lightgray	peru
lightgreen	pink
lightpink	plum
lightsalmon	powderblue
lightseagreen	purple
lightskyblue	red
lightslategray	rosybrown
lightsteelblue	royalblue
lightyellow	saddlebrown
lime	salmon
limegreen	sandybrown
linen	seagreen
magenta	seashell
maroon	sienna
mediumaquamarine	silver
mediumblue	skyblue
mediumorchid	slateblue
mediumpurple	slategray
mediumseagreen	snow
mediumslateblue	springgreen
mediumspringgreen	steelblue
mediumturquoise	tan
mediumvioletred	teal
midnightblue	thistle
mintcream	tomato
mistyrose	turquoise
moccasin	violet
navajowhite	wheat
navy	white
oldlace	whitesmoke
olive	yellow
olivedrab	yellowgreen

---

Unsupported estimation commands

Command name	Available stored results documented in
bayesmh	[BAYES] <a href="#">bayesmh</a>
bayes	[BAYES] <a href="#">bayes</a>
boxcox	[R] <a href="#">boxcox</a>
exlogistic	[R] <a href="#">exlogistic</a>
expoisson	[R] <a href="#">expoisson</a>
menl	[ME] <a href="#">menl</a>
rocfits	[R] <a href="#">rocfits</a>
varbasic	[TS] <a href="#">varbasic</a>
xthtaylor	[XT] <a href="#">xthtaylor</a>
xtpcse	[XT] <a href="#">xtpcse</a>

Also see

- [RPT] [putpdf intro](#) — Introduction to generating PDF files
- [RPT] [putpdf begin](#) — Create a PDF file
- [RPT] [putpdf paragraph](#) — Add text or images to a PDF file
- [RPT] [putpdf pagebreak](#) — Add breaks to a PDF file
- [RPT] [putpdf table](#) — Add tables to a PDF file



# Glossary

**dynamic document.** A dynamic document contains both static narrative and dynamic tags. Any changes in the data or in Stata will change the output as the document is created. The main advantages of using dynamic documents are 1) results in the document come from executing commands instead of being copied from Stata and pasted into the document; 2) no need to maintain parallel do-files; and 3) any changes in data or in Stata are reflected in the final document when it is created.

**dynamic tags.** Dynamic tags are instructions that appear in the source files from which dynamic documents are created. These dynamic tags specify actions to be taken when source files are processed by Stata's dynamic documents commands, [dyndoc](#) and [dyntext](#). For instance, dynamic tags can indicate that a block of Stata code be run, that the result of a Stata expression be inserted in text, and that a Stata graph be exported to an image file and a link to the image file be included in the dynamic document; see [\[RPT\] Dynamic tags](#) for a complete list of available dynamic tags.

**dynamic text file.** A dynamic text file contains both plain text and dynamic tags. A dynamic text file can be processed by [dyntext](#) to create a text file that incorporates Stata results.

**Markdown.** Markdown is an easy-to-read, plain-text, lightweight markup language. For a detailed discussion and the syntax of Markdown, see the [Markdown Wikipedia page](#).

Markdown is easily converted to an output format such as HTML. Stata uses Flexmark's Pegdown emulation as its default Markdown document processing engine. For information on Pegdown's flavor of Markdown, see the [Pegdown GitHub page](#).

# Subject and author index

See the [combined subject index](#) and the [combined author index](#) in the *Glossary and Index*.